

UC-NRLF



\$B 253 090

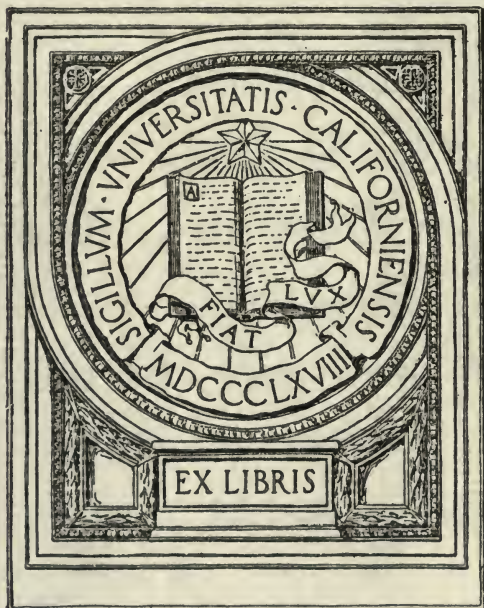
First Latin Book

Collar and Danielli



Arthur Alvarez.¹²
Room 46

GIFT OF
Daughter of
William Stuart Smith



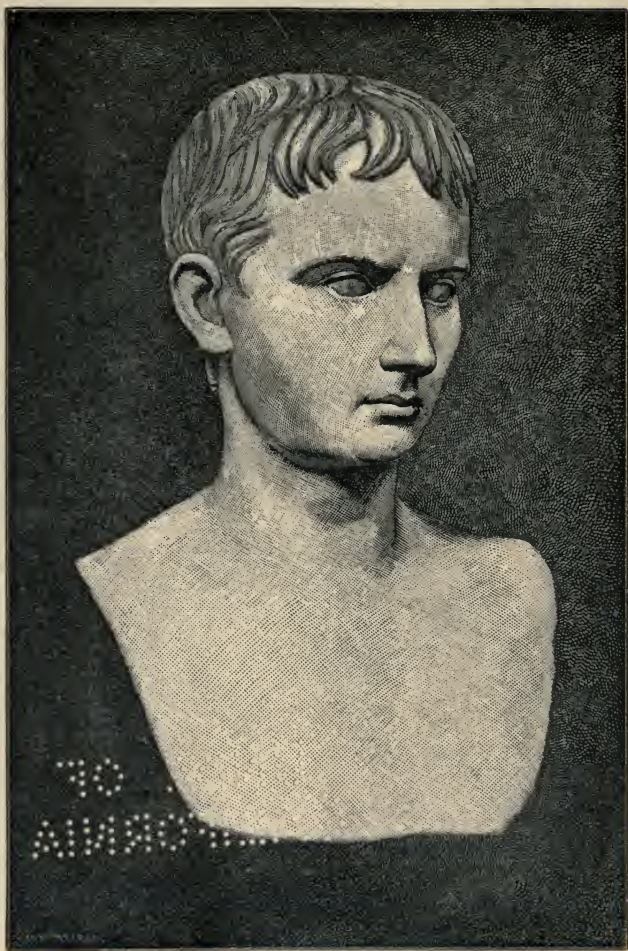
760
C69.7
1948

Arthur Alvarez.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

THE
LIBRARY
OF THE
MUSEUM OF
COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY
AT HARVARD UNIVERSITY
CAMBRIDGE, MASS.



THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS

THE
FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

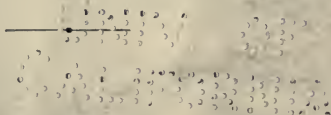
WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON



BOSTON, U.S.A.
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY
1898

Gift of Daughter of William Stuart Smit

COPYRIGHT, 1894, BY
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

TO THE
AUTHOR



P R E F A C E.

THIS book is not a revision of "The Beginner's Latin Book," nor is it intended to supersede that work. It has been written for the purpose of offering to schools that cannot afford the amount of time and practice required to complete "The Beginner's Latin Book," a work not less thorough, but easier, and demanding not more than two-thirds as much time. The reduction has been made almost wholly by shortening the exercises for translation, particularly those to be turned into Latin.

Those who compare the two books will find that the inflections of the language are illustrated with as much copiousness in this book as in the former. The same is true of the comparative completeness with which the principles of syntax are treated. In fact a place was found for some points of construction that were not taken up in the earlier book.

Except in the few pages of introduction, the *colloquia*, and some minor matters, the contents of the book are new, but everywhere increased simplicity and clearness have been studied, not novelty.

Deviations from the method of "The Beginner's Latin Book" will be found to be unimportant, except in the treatment of the pronouns, the subjunctive, the infinitive,

and the participle. Instead of deferring these subjects till very late and then dealing with them in mass, they have been brought forward much earlier in some of their uses, so as to distribute difficulties and make practice more gradual, varied, and extended. Reading lessons have been introduced early and great pains taken to grade them in point of difficulty to the progress of the learner, and at the same time to exemplify those forms and principles of syntax that have constituted the substance of preceding lessons.

Beyond such changes in order and method, it did not seem to us wise to depart from the plan of the earlier book. The surprising favor with which that book was received at once, on its publication, and its annually increasing use, amounting, as the publishers inform us, to more than 45,000 copies a year, seemed the strongest justification for building on the same plan.

In preparing the former book we conceived it to be of the highest importance, "while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin."¹ To engage the interest of the young learner at the outset of his study of Latin is to gain for him an immense advantage in wrestling with so difficult a language. Though this principle seems to have been purposely ignored in some first Latin books that have appeared since the publication of "The Beginner's Latin Book," we are not shaken in our belief that both reason and experience will continue to condemn such works as

¹ See "The Beginner's Latin Book," p. vi.

fundamentally and fatally wrong in conception, whatever be the care and skill shown in their compilation. To acquire Latin is a task calling for patience, industry, perseverance, time. But if the beginner, as sometimes happens, has the misfortune to spend a good part of a year over a wooden book of forms and exercises, then to be thrust upon a difficult and uninteresting military history, there is considerable danger that he will become impatient, lazy, discouraged, and will abandon the study.

Whatever means were found available in the preparation of "The Beginner's Latin Book" for imparting "interest and freshness," have been used in this, and in particular the principle of continuity in separate exercises has been kept in view and applied as far as was found practicable. What is meant may be found illustrated in such exercises as those numbered 104, 118, 123, 128, 129, 310, 480.

It will be seen that this book is designed to be not simply a stile to a particular author, but rather a gate to the Latin language. No effort has been made to keep the vocabularies down to the point of meagreness and to circumscribe them to one set of ideas. It was accordingly no objection in the opinion of the authors, but rather a recommendation, that the selections for reading at the end of the book contain a copious and varied vocabulary. Yet it appears that the learner, after completing the lessons that precede, has already had and used more than two-thirds of the words occurring in these selections.

The attention of all who use this book is called to the special and general vocabularies at the end. They are

not mere catalogues of words. Great pains have been taken to make them thoroughly helpful to the learner. Besides references to the text, comparisons are constantly made with synonymous words, and the learner is reminded of the most interesting kindred words in English.

We are strongly of the opinion that, after the rudiments have been learned, it is wise to have some weeks or months of reading in easy Latin before Nepos and Caesar are taken up. Even in the course of the first few months of study it is desirable to give a part of the hour of recitation to reading at sight in such a book as "The New Gradatim," the teacher leading the way and supplying the meanings of words. This book may very well be followed by some easy Latin Reader, or by "Viri Romae," for which a term or more of the first year should remain after completing the lessons. We are confident that such a course would so much lessen the difficulty of beginning Nepos or Caesar, and so much increase the pleasure and confidence of the learner, that it would soon seem strange that a different practice should ever have prevailed.

The merits of "Viri Romae," as a reading book for boys and girls, seem not to be fully appreciated in this country. It is not too difficult, it is interesting from beginning to end, and it presents to the young many noble ideals of spirit and conduct. Occasionally a pedant objects to the Latinity; but the Latinity is at least as good as that of Nepos, and learned schoolmasters all over Europe put it into the hands of their pupils.

Our thanks are due to Miss Alice M. Wing, of the Springfield High School, and to Mr. J. H. Humphries, of the Girls' High School, Philadelphia, for suggestions

made while the proof-sheets were passing through the press. We are under special obligations to Mr. John L. March, of the Harry Hillman Academy, Wilkesbarre, Pa., and to Mr. Clarence W. Gleason, of the Roxbury Latin School. Both gentlemen made valuable suggestions and read the proofs with as much concentrated attention and scrupulous care as if the work were their own and its accuracy depended upon them individually.

WM. C. COLLAR.

M. G. DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 14, 1894.

CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION	1-6
I. FIRST DECLENSION : Nominative Singular and Plural	7, 8
II. FIRST DECLENSION : Nominative and Accusative. — <i>Subject.</i> — <i>Direct Object</i>	9-11
III. FIRST DECLENSION : Dative. — <i>Indirect Object.</i> — <i>Possessive Dative</i>	11-13
IV. FIRST DECLENSION : <i>Genitive.</i> — <i>Predicate Nom- inative</i>	14, 15
V. SECOND DECLENSION : Words in <i>-us</i> and <i>-um</i> . <i>Apposition</i>	16-18
VI. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : <i>Agreement of Adjectives</i>	18-20
VII. SECOND DECLENSION : Words in <i>-er</i>	21-23
VIII. THE VERB <i>sum</i> : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative ; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Agreement of Verbs.</i> <i>Colloquium</i>	23-25
IX. FIRST CONJUGATION : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative ; Present Imperative and In- finitive	26, 27
X. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. <i>Colloquium</i>	27, 28
XI. THE VERB <i>sum</i> : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative ; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Instru- mental Ablative</i>	29-31
XII. FIRST CONJUGATION : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative ; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Ablative of Manner</i>	31-33

LESSON	PAGE
XIII. READING LESSON: THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES	33, 34
XIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>hic</i> AND <i>ille</i>	35-37
XV. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	37-39
XVI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: <i>Agreement of Relative</i>	40-42
XVII. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>is</i>	42-44
XVIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems	45-47
XIX. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems. — <i>Ablative of Cause. Colloquium</i>	47-50
XX. THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems. — <i>Descriptive Ablative and Genitive</i>	51-53
XXI. READING LESSON: SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL. <i>Colloquium</i>	53-55
XXII. THIRD DECLENSION: Stems in <i>i</i>	56-58
XXIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Stems in <i>i</i> . — <i>Ablative of Time</i>	58-61
XXIV. THIRD DECLENSION: Gender. — ANECDOTE. <i>Colloquium</i>	61-63
XXV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	64-66
XXVI. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	66, 67
XXVII. SECOND CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive.	68, 69
XXVIII. READING LESSON: THE VOLSCIANS	70
XXIX. THE LOCATIVE CASE	71, 72
XXX. SECOND CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive	72, 73
XXXI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Declension of Comparatives. — <i>Ablative of Comparison</i>	74-76
XXXII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	77-79
XXXIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i>	80-82
XXXIV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. — <i>Colloquium</i>	82-85
XXXV. THIRD CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive	85-87
XXXVI. READING LESSON: CORNELIA'S JEWELS	87, 88

CONTENTS.

xi

LESSON	PAGE
XXXVII. FOURTH DECLENSION	89, 90
XXXVIII. THIRD CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i>	91-93
XXXIX. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS: POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	94-97
XL. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE WITH <i>ut</i> AND <i>nē</i> . — Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> , <i>amō</i> , and <i>moneō</i>	98, 99
XLI. FIFTH DECLENSION: <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . <i>Colloquium</i>	100-102
XLII. THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN <i>-iō</i> : Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Accusa-</i> <i>tive of Place Whither</i>	103-105
XLIII. READING LESSON: A BATTLE	106, 107
XLIV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT WITH <i>ut</i> AND <i>ut</i> <i>nōn</i> . — Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>regō</i> and <i>capiō</i>	107-109
XLV. NUMERALS: Cardinals. <i>Colloquium</i>	110-112
XLVI. NUMERALS: Ordinals. — Irregular Adjec- tives	113, 114
XLVII. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE: Indicative, Infinitive, Present and Imperfect Subjunc- tive of <i>possum</i> . — <i>Predicate Adjective after</i> <i>Complementary Infinitive</i> . — <i>Subject of the</i> <i>Infinitive</i>	115-117
XLVIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>iste</i> , <i>īdem</i> , <i>ipse</i>	118-120
XLIX. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	121-123
L. READING LESSON: CICERONIS EPISTULA. — DE VITIIS HOMINUM	123, 124
LI. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE: <i>Indirect Dis-</i> <i>course</i> . — Future Infinitives. — <i>Tenses of the</i> <i>Infinitive</i>	125-128
LII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present and Imper- fect Subjunctive; Present Imperative and Infinitive	128-130

LESSON	PAGE
LIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect and Future Infinitive. — <i>Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing</i>	131-133
LIV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS	134, 135
LV. DERIVATION	136-138
LVI. PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES	139-141
LVII. DEPONENT VERBS: <i>Ablative with Certain Deponents. Colloquium</i>	142-145
LVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i> : <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i>	146-148
LIX. READING LESSON: ARS MEMORIAE.—CERVA ET VITIS	149, 150
LX. <i>Cum</i> -Clauses: Pluperfect Subjunctive.—NASICA ET ENNIUS	150-152
LXI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	153-155
LXII. READING LESSON: GALLIA PACATA	156, 157
LXIII. COMPOUNDS OF <i>sum</i> : <i>Dative with Compounds. — Dative of Service.</i> — DE AMICITIA	157-160
LXIV. THE VERB <i>eō</i> : <i>Expressions of Place. — Ablative of Separation. Colloquium</i>	161-165
LXV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES: <i>Indirect Questions.</i> — Perfect Subjunctive	166-169
LXVI. THE VERBS <i>ferō</i> AND <i>fiō</i> . <i>Colloquium</i>	169-172
LXVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES. — <i>Cum Causal and Concessive</i>	172-174
LXVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES AND APPEALS: Future Imperative	175-178
LXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—ALEXANDER ET PARMENIO	178-181
LXX. READING LESSON: PROSERPINA	182, 183
LXXI. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: Future Active Participle and Gerundive. — <i>Dative of Agent</i>	184-186
LXXII. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.—SUPINE.—TUBICEN	187-190
READING LESSONS	193-203
TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION	205-238
VOCABULARIES	239-286

ILLUSTRATIONS.

THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS. *Frontispiece.*

	PAGE		PAGE
ARAE	8	GALEAE	97
TUBA	13	PILA	102
HASTA	15	SIGNA	105
CARRUS	20	DENARIUS	112
CYMBA	25	GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR .	117
ARATRUM ANTIQUM .	34	CORNUA	130
ROSTRA	39	MILITES ROMANI . . .	133
EQUES	44	CICERO	141
SCIPIO . }		TESTUDO	148
HANNIBAL }	55	CALCEI	152
GLADIUS	67	PHARETRA CUM SAGITTIS	155
POCULUM	69	CURRUS	160
ARCUS	73	VEXILLUM	183
SCUTA	76	CALCAR	186
NAVIS PIRATA	79	ROMANUS IN TOGA PRAE-	
NAVIS LONGA	88	TEXTA	191
TEMPLUM	93		

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

1810 11/12 281

THE FIRST LATIN BOOK.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

THIS introduction, particularly so much of it as relates to pronunciation, may be most profitably used for reference. Pupils catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher, and, if they make mistakes, are interested in being referred to rules. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together.

1. ALPHABET.—The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. *I* does service both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant, and is called *i-consonant*.

3. Of the consonants

The mutes are **p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.**

The liquids are **l, m, n, r.**

The sibilant is **s.**

The double consonants are . . . **x = cs or gs, z = ds.**

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

4. Vowels.

ā as the last *a* in *aha'*.ǎ as the first *a* in *aha'*.ē as in *they*.ě as in *met*.ī as in *machine*.ĩ as in *pin*.ō as in *holy*.ǫ as in *wholly*.ū¹ like *oo* in *boot*.ũ like *oo* in *foot*.

5. Diphthongs.

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.au like *ou* in *our*.ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.oe like *oi* in *boil*.eu (rare) like *eu* in *feud*.

ui = wē

6. Consonants.

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following :—

c as in *come*.g as in *get*.i-consonant like *y* in *yet*.s as in *sun*.t as in *time*.v like *w* in *wine*.ch like *k* in *kite*.ph like *f* in *far*.

7. SYLLABLES.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *ae-gri-tū'-dō*, *sickness*.

¹ In *qu*, *gu*, and sometimes in *su*, before a vowel, *u* is a semi-vowel or consonant, is pronounced like *w*, and joined in

utterance with the preceding letter; so likewise in *cui* and *huic*: *quis*, *qui*, *who*, *an'-guis*, *snake*; *cōn-suē'-tus*, *accustomed*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: a-mā'-bi-lis, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: im'-pro-bus, *bad*; ho'-spes, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: ab'-est (ab, *away*; est, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

8. QUANTITY.

1. Vowels are *long* (¯) or *short* (˘). In this book the long vowels are marked, except in some titles; unmarked vowels must be regarded as short.

2. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*: pō-ē'-ma, *poem*; grā'-tī-ae, *thanks*; nī'-hil, *nothing*.

3. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long: in-cāū'-tus, *heedless*; in-ī'-quus (*inaequus*), *unequal*; cō'-gō (*cōgō*), *collect*.

4. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: vō'-cēs, *voices*; ae'-dēs, *temple*.

5. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute

followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *sunt, they are; tem'-plum, temple; dux, leader.*

9. ACCENT.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: *tu'-ba, trumpet.*

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *prae-dī'-cō, foretell; prae'-dī-cō, declare; il-le'-ce-brae, snares; pa-ter'-nus,¹ paternal.*

3. Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the *-ne* or *-que*: *amat'-ne, does he love? dōna'-que, and gifts.*

10. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION. — By this method the above rules relating to syllables (7) and accent (9) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease*, and the final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose*.

¹ Here, though the *vowel* of the penult is short, the *syllable* is long by 8, 5.

The following *colloquium* may be used for practice and to illustrate the preceding statements. See introductory note, page 1.

11.

Colloquium.

Augustus. Quid tibi vīs?

What do you wish (for yourself)?

Iūlus. Tēcum ambulāre velim.

I should like to take a walk with you.

A. Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.

I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.

I. Cūr māvīs?

Why do you prefer (that)?

A. Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.

My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.

I. Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?

Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?

A. Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ārdōre.

Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.

I. At iam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.

But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.

A. Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vīs, nōbiscum venī.

What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.

12. CASES.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are : *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative, locative*. Their characteristics of form, meaning, and use are illustrated in the paradigms and exercises which follow.

13. GENDER. — The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months, are *masculine* : *agricola, farmer* ; *Cicerō, Cicero* ; *Padus, Po* ; *aquilō, north wind* ; *Iānuārius, January*.

2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine* : *rēgīna, queen* ; *Tullia, Tullia* ; *Āfrica, Africa* ; *Rōma, Rome* ; *Sicilia, Sicily* ; *pirus, pear-tree*.

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

LESSON I.

First Declension.

THE STEM¹ ENDS IN *ă*.GENDER. The gender is feminine ; but see **13, 1**.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

14.*Models.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mēnsa, table.</i>	<i>mēnsae, tables.</i>
<i>puella, girl.</i>	<i>puellae, girls.</i>
<i>hasta, spear.</i>	<i>hastae, spears.</i>

a. How does the plural of the Latin noun differ from the singular? Form the plural of the adjectives below in the same way.

15.*Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
<i>columba, f. dove.</i>	<i>alba, white.</i>
<i>dea, f. goddess.</i>	<i>bona, good.</i>
<i>filia, f. daughter.</i>	<i>lāta, wide, broad.</i>
<i>hasta, f. spear, p. 15.</i>	<i>longa, long.</i>
<i>mēnsa, f. table.</i>	<i>parva, small.</i>
<i>Mūsa, f. Muse.</i>	<i>tua, your, yours (247, a).</i>
<i>puella, f. girl.</i>	
<i>via, f. road, street.</i>	
VERBS.	ADVERBS.
<i>est, (he, she, it) is.</i>	<i>ubi, where.</i>
<i>sunt, (they) are.</i>	<i>-ne, sign of a question (9, 3).</i>

¹ The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added

to express the relation of the word to other words.

16.

Model Sentences.

1. Columba est alba, *the dove is white.*
2. Columbae sunt albae, *doves are white.*
3. Estne tua filia parva? *is your daughter small?*
4. Ubi sunt longae hastae? *where are the long spears?*

a. Observe that the adjectives in the above sentences agree with their nouns in number.

b. In Latin there is no article: **mēnsa** may be translated, *a table, the table, or table.*

17. 1. Via est longa. 2. Viae sunt longae. 3. Puella est parva. 4. Puellae sunt parvae. 5. Hastae sunt longae. 6. Mēnsa est lāta. 7. Deae sunt bonae. 8. Mūsa est bona. 9. Ubi est filia bona? 10. Suntne columbae parvae? 11. Estne via lāta? 12. Longa via est bona. 13. Longae viae sunt bonae. 14. Suntne longae viae lātae?

18. 1. Where is the little girl? 2. Where are the little girls? 3. Are the girls small? 4. Are the goddesses good? 5. The broad street is long. 6. The white dove is small. 7. The daughters are good. 8. Is the spear a good one¹? 9. Is the spear long? 10. Are the spears long? 11. The tables are long and broad.

¹ Omit.



ARAE.

LESSON II.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

19.

Paradigm.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. tuba, *a trumpet.*N. tubae, *trumpets.*G. tubae, *of a trumpet.*G. tubārum, *of trumpets.*D. tubae, *to or for a trumpet.*D. tubis, *to or for trumpets.*AC. tubam, *a trumpet.*AC. tubās, *trumpets.*AB. tubā, *with a trumpet.*AB. tubis, *with trumpets.*

a. TERMINATIONS, printed in the paradigm in blacker type, consist of case endings joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case ending.

b. Decline the adjectives below like the nouns.

20.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

ADJECTIVES.

āra, *f. altar.*grāta, *pleasing, acceptable.*Minerva,¹ *f. Minerva.*mea, *my, mine.*pecūnia, *f. money.*pulchra, *beautiful.*poēta, *m. poet (13, 1).*rēgina, *f. queen.*rosa, *f. rose.*et, *conj. and.*tuba, *f. trumpet, p. 13.*quid, *pron. what?*

VERBS.

amat, *(he, she, it) loves.*dat, *(he, she, it) gives.*amant, *(they) love.*dant, *(they) give.*habet, *(he, she, it) has.*laudat, *(he, she, it) praises.*habent, *(they) have.*laudent, *(they) praise.*

a. How does the plural of the verb forms differ from the singular?

¹ No plural.

21.

Model Sentences.

1. **Minerva** āram habet, *Minerva has an altar.*
2. **Poēta** tuam filiam laudat, *the poet praises your daughter.*
3. **Quid** habent **Minerva** et **Mūsae**? *what have Minerva and the Muses?*
4. **Pecūniam** meam habent, *they have my money.*

a. Observe the adjectives **tuam** and **meam**. They agree with their nouns in case as well as in number.

b. Observe the order of the words in each Latin sentence, and compare it with the order in English.

c. Observe the cases. To what case in English does the accusative in these sentences correspond?

d. When the subject of the verb is not expressed, the ending of the verb shows the person and number of the omitted subject.

22. Rule. — *The subject of a finite¹ verb is in the nominative.*

23. Rule. — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

- 24.** 1. **Tua** pecūnia est grāta. 2. **Quid** habent poētae?
 3. **Meae** filiae rosās albās dant. 4. **Datne** dea bona pulchram tubam?
 5. **Puellae** pulchrae columbās amant.
 6. **Minerva** et **Mūsae** ārās habent. 7. **Poēta** amat columbam parvam.
 8. **Hastās** longās laudat. 9. **Pulchrās** puellās laudant. 10. **Ubi** sunt tuae tubae?

- 25.** 1. They praise the broad streets. 2. The beautiful queen has a beautiful rose. 3. Where is the queen and where is the poet? 4. He gives a spear and a

¹ That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

trumpet. 5. Your spear is a long one.¹ 6. They have money. 7. What has Minerva? 8. Minerva has a spear. 9. Has the goddess a beautiful altar? 10. Are the tables pleasing?

26.

Colloquium.

Estne via lāta? Certē (*certainly*), via est lāta et longa.
 Quid habet puella parva? Puella parva rosam albam habet.
 Laudantne bonam rēginam? Rēginam laudant et amant.
 Ubi est mea filia parva? Tua filia est in (*in*) viā.



LESSON III.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

DATIVE.

27.

Model Sentences.

1. Poēta rēginae rosam dat, *the poet gives a rose to the queen; or, the poet gives the queen a rose.*

2. Columba alba est puellae, *there is a white dove to the girl; that is, the girl has a white dove.*

3. Pecūnia poētae grāta est, *money is acceptable to the poet.*

a. Observe in the first sentence that the *direct object* of **dat** is **rosam**. *What* the poet gives is a rose; the person *to whom* he gives is **rēginae**, representing the *indirect object*.

28. **Rule.** — *The indirect object is put in the dative.*

b. Observe now the second sentence. The meaning is exactly the same as if it were **puella habet columbam**. The dative thus used is called the *dative of the possessor*, or the *possessive dative*.

¹ Omit.

The dative is used with ady.
cara & grate & verb placet
pleasy

12

FIRST DECLENSION.

29. Rule. — The dative is used with *est, sunt, etc.*, forms of the verb *sum* (516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject.

c. The third sentence illustrates a use of the dative with adjectives.

30.

Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

agricola, m. *farmer*.
Britannia, f. *Britain*.
fābula, f. *story*.
Galba, m. *Galba*.
lūna, f. *moon*.
silva, f. *forest*.

VERBS.

erat, *was*.
erant, *were*.
nārrat, *tells*.
nārrant, *tell*.
placet, *pleases*,
placent, *please*, } with dative.

ADJECTIVES.

cāra, *dear*. with Dat.
nova, *new*.

in, prep. with abl., *in, on*.
grāta est = *placet*.
grātae sunt = *placent*.

Follow the Latin order in the first rendering of Latin sentences into English. That will aid you in making out the meaning; you can then translate into good English.

31. 1. *Agricolae est filia*. 2. *Agricola filiam habet*.
3. *Poēta rēginae nārrat fābulam*. 4. *Fābula rēginae est grāta*.
5. *Fābula rēginae placet*. 6. *Parvae puellae agricola dat rosam*.
7. *Tubae parvis puellis placent*. 8. *In Britannīa erant longae viae*.
9. *Galba et poēta in silvā erant*. 10. *Lūna nova erat agricolae grāta*.

32. Note the arrangement of words in the preceding exercise.

a. In a Latin sentence the subject is oftener placed first than elsewhere, and the verb (except *est* and *sunt*) oftener comes last than elsewhere.

The dative is in cara.

b. If the subject seems to be more emphatic than any other word, it should be placed first.

c. Of two words that go together, as an adjective and a noun, the more emphatic comes first. The adjective oftener precedes.

d. It follows that there is great freedom in the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence ; but the order must have a meaning. Do not arrange your words at haphazard.

33. Examine these three forms of the fifth sentence of **31** and the translation :—

1. *Fābula rēginae placet, the STORY (not the poem) pleases the queen.*

2. *Rēginae placet fābula, the story pleases the QUEEN (not the king).*

3. *Placet fābula rēginae, the story PLEASES (not grieves) the queen.*

34. 1.¹ Galba has a daughter. 2. The daughter tells the poet² a story. 3. On the altar there³ was a rose. 4. The new moon pleases¹ the farmer.⁴ 5. The Muses were dear to Minerva. 6. My daughters give the farmer some³ money. 7. And the farmers give my daughters⁵ pretty roses. 8. What has the queen? 9. The altars please¹ the goddesses.⁵

¹ Translate in two ways.

⁴ Dative.

² Not the acc. Look out for other examples.

⁵ *Dea* and *filia* have *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural : *deābus, filiābus.*

³ Omit.



TUBA.

The place where anything is done is in the abl.

LESSON IV.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

GENITIVE. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

35. *Model Sentences.*1. **Vesta erat dea Rōmae**, *Vesta was a goddess of Rome.*2. **Victōria est Britanniae rēgīna**, *Victoria is queen of Britain.*3. **Cāra deae est āra Mūsae**, *dear to the goddess is the Muse's altar.*4. **Fīlia agricolae rosam dat poētae**, *the farmer's daughter gives a rose to the poet.*

a. Point out the genitive in each of the above sentences, and tell what word it limits.

36. Rule. — *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.*b. Examine the first two sentences. **Dea** denotes the same person as **Vesta** the subject; **rēgīna** the same as the subject **Victōria**. Nouns thus used with **est** and similar verbs are called *predicate nouns*.**37. Rule.** — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.***38.** *Vocabulary.***Eurōpa**, f. *Europe.***fera**, f. *wild beast.***Gallia**, f. *Gaul.***Graecia**, f. *Greece.***Helvētia**, f. *Helvetia.***īnsula**, f. *island.***Ītalia**, f. *Italy.***Rōma**, f. *Rome.***terra**, f. *land, country.***Vesta**, f. *Vesta (a goddess).***Victōria**, f. *Victoria.*

—

māgna, adj. *great.***quis**, pron. *who?***hodiō**, adv. *to-day.***nōn**, adv. *not.***videt**, verb, *sees.***vident**, verb, *see.*

39. 1. *Helvētia erat terra Galliae.* 2. *Gallia erat Eurōpae terra.* 3. *Ītalia est Eurōpae māgna terra.* 4. *Vesta et Minerva deae erant Rōmae.* 5. *Nōne¹ pulchrae erant Vestae et Minervae ārae?* 6. *Ubi sunt hodiē Graeciae deae?* 7. *Graecia erat terra Mūsārum.* 8. *Nōne sunt puellārum rosae māgnae?* 9. *Britannia est Eurōpae īnsula.* 10. *Quis viās Britanniae nōn laudat?*

a. In which sentences does the genitive precede the word which it limits? Account for its position.

40. 1. Italy and Greece are countries of Europe. 2. The roads of Greece are not wide and long. 3. Are the roads of the island long? 4. Who sees my daughters? 5. The queen sees the farmers' daughters. 6. She gives the beautiful girl money. 7. Galba has a trumpet. 8. Who sees wild beasts in Italy to-day? 9. They see the new moon. 10. Dear to the poet are the farmer's woods.

41.

Colloquium.

Estne hodiē in Britannīā rēgīna? Certē, Vīctōria est rēgīna in Britannīā.

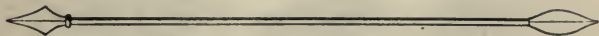
Filiās habetne rēgīna? Filiās habet rēgīna.

Ubi sunt ferae māgnae? Sunt in Āfricā et in Āsiā.

Nōne sunt ferae in Eurōpā? Nōn sunt māgnae ferae.

Quid puellis placet? Rosae albae placent puellis.

¹ *Nōne* expects the answer *yes*.



HASTA.

LESSON V.

Second Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN ō.

APPOSITION.

42. GENDER. — Nouns of the second declension ending in *um* are neuter ; most others are masculine. But see 13, 2.

43. Paradigms.

Hortus, garden.		Dōnum, gift.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. hortus	hortī	N. dōnum	dōna
G. hortī	hortōrum	G. dōnī	dōnōrum
D. hortō	hortīs	D. dōnō	dōnīs
Ac. hortum	hortōs	Ac. dōnum	dōna
AB. hortō	hortīs	AB. dōnō	dōnīs

Vol. hortē
a. The vocative singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension has a special form in *ē*: hortē. The vocative of other nouns is the same in form as the nominative.

b. The vocative is the case of address: Mārce, Marcus.

c. What cases of hortus are alike in the singular? What in the plural? What case of the singular is like a plural case? What cases of the plural have endings like those of tuba (19)?

44. Paradigm illustrating Apposition.

N.	Mārcus amīcus, Marcus, a friend.
G.	Mārcī amīcī, of Marcus, a friend.
D.	Mārcō amīcō, to Marcus, a friend.
Ac.	Mārcum amīcum, Marcus, a friend.
AB.	ā Mārcō amīcō, by Marcus, a friend.
V.	Mārce, amīce, Marcus, (my) friend.

a. When a descriptive noun is joined to another, meaning the same person or thing, as *amicus* to *Mārcus*, it is called an *appositive*.

45. Rule.—*An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.* *only*

a. Read again the first two model sentences of Lesson IV. You will see that the *predicate nominative* resembles an *appositive*. Wherein do they differ?

46.*Vocabulary.*

amicus, -ī, m. *friend*.

cibus, -ī, m. *food*.

dominus, -ī, m. *lord, master*.

equus, -ī, m. *horse*.

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*.

inimicus, -ī, m. *enemy*.

nauta, -ae, m. *sailor*.

dōnum, -ī, n. *gift*.

frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain*.

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin*, p. 102.

pōculum, -ī, n. *cup*, p. 69.

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*.

dēlectat, *delights*.

dēlectant, *delight*.

47. 1. *Mārcus amicus est domini.* 2. *Mārcus, agricolae amicus, erat nauta.* 3. *Puella pōculum, dōnum amicī, habet.* 4. *Equi erant Galbae, agricolae.* 5. *Dōnum dēlectat poētā, rēginae amicū.* 6. *Agricolae frūmentum equis dant.* 7. *Cibus equōrum est frūmentum.* 8. *In pōculō est vīnum.* 9. *Columba grāta est poētae, Mārci amicō.* 10. *Ubi erant tubae et pīla, dōna amicōrum?* 11. *In Helvētiā, Galliae terrā, erant silvae māgnae.* 12. *Mārce, amice, quid est in pōculō nautae?* 13. *Nauta vīnum in pōculō habet.*

48. 1. Where are the farmer's friends to-day? 2. Who sees wild beasts in Italy, a country of Europe? 3. Do the javelins and the cups delight the enemies? 4. They

tell Marcus, the sailor, a new story. 5. Marcus praises the good story. 6. To the maiden, daughter of the master, he gives a white rose. 7. The rose was the gift of a friend. 8. Friend, the little girl, your daughter, is in the garden. 9. Do not¹ the maidens love the farmer's garden? 10. The enemies of the farmers are in the forests of the island.



LESSON VI.

First and Second Declensions.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

49. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders : **bonus**, masculine ; **bona**, feminine ; **bonum**, neuter. The masculine is declined like **hortus**, the feminine like **tuba**, and the neuter like **dōnum**.

a. For the full declension of **bonus**, see 500.

50.

Model Sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Hortus est māgnus . | 5. Hastam longam habet. |
| 2. Hortī sunt māgnī . | 6. Hastās longās habent. |
| 3. Dōnum est grātum . | 7. Agricola est bonus . |
| 4. Dōna sunt grāta . | 8. Agricolae sunt bonī . |

a. Adjectives are used in six of the above sentences, as in the first lesson, after **est** and **sunt**. So used, they are called *predicate adjectives*. Compare predicate nouns (35).

¹ See p. 15, note 1.

51.

*Paradigm.***Nauta bonus, good sailor.**

N. nauta bonus	nautae bonī
G. nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
D. nautae bonō	nautis bonīs
Ac. nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
Ab. nautā bonō	nautis bonīs

52. In the first six of the model sentences, an adjective qualifying a noun has the same *termination* as its noun. But observe 7 and 8 and the paradigm *nauta bonus*.

53. Rule. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

a. Decline *agricola validus, strong farmer; grātus poēta, pleasing poet.*

54.

Vocabulary.

carrus, -ī, m. wagon, p. 20.	clārus, -a, -um, famous.
incola, -ae, m. inhabitant.	multus, -a, -um, much.
oppidum, -ī, n. town.	multi (pl. of multus), -ae, -a, many.
rēmus, -ī, m. oar.	perītus, -a, -um, skilful.
servus, -ī, m. slave, servant.	validus, -a, -um, strong.
ventus, -ī, m. wind.	

in, prep. with acc., into.

portat, bears, carries.
portant, bear, carry.

ADJECTIVES ALREADY USED IN THE FEMININE.

albus, -a, -um, white.	longus, -a, -um, long.
bonus, -a, -um, good.	māgnus, -a, -um, large.
cārus, -a, -um, dear.	meus, -a, -um, my, mine.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.	novus, -a, -um, new.
lātus, -a, -um, wide.	parvus, -a, -um, small.
tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine, your, yours.	

55. 1. Nōne agricola bonus hortum bonum habet? 2. Agricolae bonō est hōrtus māgnus. 3. Mārcus filiae dat pōcula, pulchra dōna. 4. Nautae peritō sunt rēmī māgnī. 5. Carrī agricolārum erant validi. 6. Māgnī ventī nautis nōn sunt grāti. 7. Poēta clārus Mūsis placet. 8. Equī dominī frūmentum in oppida portant. 9. Multi hortī in oppidō sunt. 10. Multum cibum in oppidum portant equī et servī.

56. 1. Galba is a sturdy¹ farmer. 2. He has much grain, a food pleasant to horses. 3. His² horses carry their² master into town. 4. The inhabitants of the town see Galba and the horses. 5. Marcus, where is your slave to-day? 6. He is in the garden. 7. And is telling³ the little girl⁴ a story. 8. The pleasing tale¹ delights the girl. 9. Where is the garden, Marcus, my² dear friend? 10. It is in Britain, the land of skilful sailors. 11. Are the inhabitants of Britain sailors?

¹ Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but the pupil

will generally understand what Latin word is meant.

² Omit.

³ Tells.

⁴ Not accusative.



CARRUS.

LESSON VII.

Second Declension. — *Continued.*

57.

*Paradigms.***Puer**, *boy*; **Ager**, *field*; **Vir**, *man*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
N.	puer	puerī		ager	agrī		vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum		agrī	agrōrum		virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs		agrō	agrīs		virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs		agrū	agrōs		virum	virōs
AB.	puerō	puerīs		agrō	agrīs		virō	virīs

a. Observe that the endings of **puer** and **ager** are everywhere the same. But **puer** keeps the *e* of the nominative; **ager** drops it, except in the nominative.

58. Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of the second declension are declined like **ager**; that is, they drop the *e* of the nominative.

59. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** contract the genitive ending **ii** to **i**: **cōnsi'lium**, *gen. cōnsi'li*, *advice, plan*. **Filius**, *son*, and proper names in **-ius** contract **-ie** in the vocative to **i**: **fili**, (*my*) *son*; **Mercu'ri**, *Mercury*. But the place of the accent is not changed. See 495.

60.

Model Sentences.

1. **Puer filius est virī**, *the boy is the man's son*.
2. **Vir filiō dat cōnsilium**, *the man gives his son advice*.
3. **Galbae, agricolae, sunt agrī multi**, *Galba, the farmer, has many fields*.
4. **Fili, estne poēta Mūsae cārus?** *my son, is the poet dear to the Muse?*

a. The first sentence illustrates the *genitive* and the *predicate nominative*. What does each of the other sentences illustrate?

61.

Vocabulary.

ager, agri, m. *field*.

cōnsilium, -i, n. *advice, plan*.

Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia*.

filius, -i, m. *son*.

liber, -bri, m. *book*.

—liberi,¹ -ōrum (pl.), m. *children*.

magister, -tri, m. *master*.

puer, -eri, m. *boy*.

Sextus, -i, m. *Sextus*.

vir, viri, m. *man*.

—

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick*.

niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, pretty*.

liber, -era, -erum, *free*.

miser, -era, -erum, *wretched*.

nam, conj. *for*.

dominus, *master of a household or slaves*.

magister, *a superior, director; hence, master of a school*.

pueri, *general word for children*.

liberi, *children of free parents*.

62. 1. Libri pueri sunt in mēnsā. 2. Cōnsilium virōrum clārōrum erat bonum. 3. Sexti liberi sunt aegri. 4. Cornēlia, poētae filia, librōs habet pulchrōs. 5. Servus miser nōn multum cibum habet. 6. Incolae liberi oppidum liberum habent. 7. Nigri equi agricolārum in agris sunt. 8. Quis habet carrōs validōs et equōs nigrōs? 9. Nōne est aegrō nautae cāra pecūnia? 10. Estne Cornēliae vinum parvō² in pōculō?

¹ The plural of the adjective used as a noun.

² Adjective, preposition, noun,

is often the order, where, as here, the three are combined.

What is the English order?

63. 1. The book is pleasing to the master. 2. The poet's books are pleasing to the master's son. 3. The poor slave has a long spear. 4. Sextus gives the sick boy a beautiful book. 5. The oar and the javelin please the skilful man.¹ 6. The son of Sextus is dear to Galba, the farmer. 7. The black boy is a servant of the free man. 8. They praise the farmer's black horse. 9. For it carries the sick girl into the town. 10. And many inhabitants of the town tell their children² the story.

LESSON VIII.

The Verb sum.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

64. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of *sum* (516).

65. 1. *Est, erat, erit.* 2. *Sunt, erant, erunt.* 3. *Sumus, erāmus, erimus.* 4. *Sum, eram, erō.* 5. *Es, erās, eris.* 6. *Estis, erātis, eritis.* 7. *Es, este, esse.*

a. In the preceding lessons verb forms have been used only in the third person : *est, erat* for the singular ; *sunt, erant* for the plural. The forms in the exercise above show that the ending changes to denote person as well as number. The first and second persons as subjects are not commonly expressed.

Rule. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

¹ See 33.

² See 56, note 4.

66. 1. I am, we are. 2. I was, we were. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. He is, they are. 5. He was, they were. 6. He will be, they will be. 7. You are, you were. 8. You will be. 9. Be thou, be you. 10. To be.

67.

Vocabulary.

aqua, -ae, f. *water*.

statua, -ae, f. *statue*.

aurum, -ī, n. *gold*.

deus, -ī, m. *god* (499).

aureus, -a, -um, *golden*.

Mercurius, -ī, m. *Mercury* (59).

nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger* (59).

dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired, very tired*.

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield*, p. 76.

vocat, *calls, summons*.

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep*.

vocant, *call, summon*.

68. 1. Amicus Mercu'rī erō. 2. Nam Mercurius nūntius erat deōrum. 3. Servus est inimicus pulchrī Mercurī. 4. Tū (*thou*), O miser serve, es Minervae inimicus. 5. Amicī Mercurī nūnti erimus. 6. Tū (*thou*), O puer, agricolae validi es filius. 7. Puerī boni, este hodiē amicī miserī equi. 8. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 9. Liberī magistrī dēfessī erunt. 10. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 11. Dēfessō equō grāta est aqua. 12. Nūntius incolās vocat oppidī.

69. 1. Minerva had¹ a golden statue. 2. There was gold on the statue of Minerva. 3. Who has a golden shield? 4. Was not² Mercury messenger of the gods? 5. A girl gives a sick sailor some³ wine and water. 6. The wine she carries in a pretty cup. 7. He praises the pretty cup and the wine. 8. The water he does not care for. 9. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants

¹ Use a form of *sum*.

² *Nōne*.

³ *Omit*.

of Britain. 10. Britain is a large island and has many towns and fields.

70.

Colloquium.

DUO PUERĪ.

two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōne est in scholā?

Charles

school

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam,

By no means

river

boat

et libenter nāvigat.

gladly sails = likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? (Where did Charles get a boat?)

whence

Ab avunculō, nam avunculus Carolum amat.

from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nēsciō; sine dubiō cibum et pōculum; nam in

I don't know without doubt

animō habet . . .

mind

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amice, crās patēbit.

good-by

to-morrow

it will be open = the secret will be out



CYMBA.

LESSON IX.

First Conjugation. — *Ā-Verbs*.

Amō (stem *amā*), *love*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:¹ *amō*, *I love*; ² *amāre*, *to love*; *amāvī*, *I loved*; ³ *amātus*, *loved*.

71. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *amō* (511).

72. 1. *Amat*, *amābat*, *amābit*. 2. *Amātur*, *amābatur*, *amābitur*. 3. *Amant*, *amābant*, *amābunt*. 4. *Amantur*, *amābantur*, *amābuntur*. 5. *Amō*, *amābam*, *amābō*. 6. *Amor*, *amābar*, *amābor*. 7. *Amāmus*, *amāmur*. 8. *Amābāmus*, *amābāmur*. 9. *Amābimus*, *amābimur*. 10. *Amā*, *amāre*. 11. *Amāte*, *amāmini*. 12. *Amāre*, *amāri*.

a. Notice how frequently *r* and *ur* mark forms as passive.

73. Like *amō*, inflect in the same moods and tenses the following:

<i>dēlectō</i>	<i>dēlectāre</i>	<i>dēlectāvī</i>	<i>dēlectātus</i> , <i>delight</i> .
<i>laudō</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī</i>	<i>laudātus</i> , <i>praise</i> .
<i>nārrō</i>	<i>nārrāre</i>	<i>nārrāvī</i>	<i>nārrātus</i> , <i>tell</i> .
<i>portō</i>	<i>portāre</i>	<i>portāvī</i>	<i>portātus</i> , <i>carry</i> .

a. The stem is found by dropping *re* of the infinitive.

¹ The present indicative, the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the perfect participle are called, from their importance, the *principal parts*. The

conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before *-re* in the present infinitive active. See 337.

² Also *do love*, *am loving*.

³ Also *have loved*.

74. 1. He praises, he is praised. 2. He was praising, he was praised. 3. He will praise, he will be praised. 4. They are praising, they are praised. 5. They were praising, they were praised. 6. They will be praising, they will be praised. 7. To praise, to be praised. 8. Praise (sing.), praise (pl.). 9. They do praise, they will praise.



LESSON X.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

75.

Model Sentences.

1. *Rēgīna agricolam laudat, the queen praises the farmer.*

2. *Agricola ā (or ab) rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.*

a. Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive. The object of the active becomes the subject of the passive; the subject (that is, the *doer* or *agent*) of the active is expressed with the passive by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

76. Rule. — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

a. **Ab** is used before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.

77. 1. *Vir peritum puerum laudat.* 2. *Puer peritus ā virō laudātur.* 3. *Galba Mārcum amicum amābat.* 4. *Mārcus ā Galbā amābātur.* 5. *Magister fābulam clāram liberis nārrābit.* 6. *Fābula clāra liberis ā magistrō nārrābitur.* 7. *Miseri servi dominum amābunt.* 8. *Ā servis miseris amābitur dominus.* 9. *Equus niger mul-*

tum frūmentum et aquam in oppidum portat. 10. Frūmentum in oppidum ab servō nigrō portātur. 11. Nūnti cōnsilium nārrābātur ā Galbā. 12. Nārratne Galba nūnti cōnsilia?

78. 1. Sextus loves the boy, his son. 2. The boy is called by Sextus. 3. The statues of the gods were praised by the free man. 4. The free man was praising the statues of the gods. 5. The tired messenger was carrying a golden shield. 6. A golden shield was carried by the messenger. 7. We shall tell a story to the inhabitants of the island. 8. Shall you carry javelins into the forest?

79.

Colloquium.

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

Father and Little Son.

P. Quae, filiole, hodiē in scholā tractābantur?
 what little son were discussed

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātivus et verbum *amō*.
 case word.

P. Quid significat Anglicē verbum *amō*?
 means in English

F. Verbum *amō* significat *love*.

P. Dē ablātivō quoque mihi nārrā.
 about also me

F. Rēgulam dē ablātivō tibi nārrābō.
 rule you I will tell

P. Rēgulamne tibi dedit magister?
 did give

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātivō *agentis*. Ante ablātivum *agentis* semper praepositio *ā* vel *ab* pōnitur.
 certainly of the agent before preposition or is placed

P. Optimē, mī puer; tibi erit rubrum mālum.
 well done my red apple

LESSON XI.

The Verb sum. — *Continued.*

THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

80. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum** (516).

81. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.
 3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fui.
 5. Fuerās, fueris, fuisti. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis.
 7. Esse, fuisse.

82. 1. He has been, they have been. 2. He had been, they had been. 3. He will have been, they will have been. 4. To have been, to be.

83.*Model Sentences.*

1. Nauta ventō et rēmīs portātur, *the sailor is borne by wind and oars.*

2. Virī tubā vocābantur aureā, *the men were summoned by a golden trumpet.*

3. Agrī ab agricolā arātrō novō arantur, *the fields are ploughed by a farmer with his new plough.*

a. Observe that the ablatives ventō, rēmīs, tubā, and arātrō answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means*.

84. Rule. — *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

b. The third sentence illustrates the difference between the ablative of the agent and the ablative of means. How are they differently expressed in Latin? (See 76.)

85.

Vocabulary.

arātrum, -ī, n. <i>plough</i> , p. 34.	Graecus, -ī, m. <i>a Greek</i> .
arma, -ōrum, n. (pl.) <i>arms</i> .	Rōmānus, -ī, m. <i>a Roman</i> .
bellum, -ī, n. <i>war</i> .	sagitta, -ae, f. <i>arrow</i> , p. 155.
gladius, -ī, m. <i>sword</i> , p. 67.	templum, -ī, n. <i>temple</i> , p. 93.
appellō, appellāre, appellāvi, appellātus, <i>name, call</i> .	
arō, arāre, arāvi, arātus, <i>plough</i> .	
fugō, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātus, <i>put to flight, rout</i> .	
ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvi, ōrnātus, <i>adorn, deck</i> .	
superō, superāre, superāvi, superātus, <i>overcome, outdo</i> .	
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātus, <i>wound</i> .	

86. 1. Servus fuerat vir liber. 2. Galbae (*dative*) fuerant equi et carri. 3. Nova lūna fuit pulchra. 4. In insulā fuerant multae silvae. 5. Nōne ager arātrō ā virō arābitur? 6. Inimicus gladiō et sagittis vulnerātur. 7. Viri equōs hastis et sagittis in bellō vulnerābant. 8. Minervae statua aurō ōrnābātur. 9. Poētae aegrō somnus erit grātus in hortō. 10. Rōmāni oppidum appellābant Rōmam.¹ 11. Ā Rōmānis oppidum appellābātur Rōma.² 12. Graeci nōn amābant Rōmānōs. 13. Rōmāni ā Graecis nōn amābantur. 14. Rōmāni Graecōs in bellō armis fugābant et superābant. 15. Graeci Rōmānōrum armis fugābantur.

87. 1. Where have we been? 2. Marcus, the friend of Galba, had been a sailor. 3. Fields are ploughed

¹ Predicate accusative.

² Predicate nominative.

by farmers with ploughs and horses. 4. The pretty girl decked the cup with roses. 5. Was not the cup decked with roses by the pretty girl? 6. Arrows and spears are the arms of the slaves. 7. With swords and arrows we shall overcome the men.

LESSON XII.

First Conjugation. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

88. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō** (511).

89. The compound forms of the passive are made by combining forms of **sum** with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like **bonus**), agrees in gender and number with the subject : **amāta est**, *she was loved*; **amātum est**, *it was loved*; **amātī sunt**, *they (masc.) were loved*.

90. 1. **Amāvit**, **amāverat**, **amāverit**. 2. **Amātus est**, **amātus erat**, **amātus erit**. 3. **Amāvērunt**, **amāverant**, **amāverint**. 4. **Amāvī**, **amātus sum**. 5. **Amāverāmus**, **amātī erāmus**. 6. **Amāvērimus**, **amātī erimus**. 7. **Amāvisse**, **amātus esse**.

91. 1. He has been praised, had been praised, will have been praised. 2. They have been praised, had

been praised, will have been praised. 3. We (masc.) have been praised, had been praised, shall have been praised. 4. We (fem.) have been praised, had been praised, shall have been praised.

92.

Model Sentences.

1. Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*

2. Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*

3. Agricola agrum māgnā cūrā arat, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*

a. Observe how *manner* is expressed in the above Latin sentences: (1) cum cūrā; (2) māgnā cum cūrā; (3) māgnā cūrā. In Latin as in English the manner of an action may be expressed by an adverb: fidēliter, *faithfully*.

93. Rule. — *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative, usually with cum; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

94.

Vocabulary.

audācia, -ae, f. *daring, boldness.*

cūrā, -ae, f. *care.*

diligentia, -ae, f. *industry.*

gaudium, -i, n. *joy, gladness (59).*

patientia, -ae, f. *patience.*

studium, -i, n. *zeal, eagerness (59).*

vicinus, -i, m. *neighbor.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

sed, conj., *but.*

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus, *build.*

agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātus, *chase, drive.*

labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus, *toil, suffer.*

pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātus, *fight.* *intrān*

95. 1. Rōmānī māgnā cum audāciā in bellō pūgnāvērunt. 2. Oppida multa in Ītaliā aedificāvērunt. 3. Cum cūrā ā Rōmānīs aedificāta sunt oppida. 4. Cūrae somnum fugāverant. 5. Puer piger equum pigrum agitāvit. 6. Servi miserī māgnā patientiā labōrāverant. 7. Multō cum studiō ā virīs agitātae erant ferae. 8. Vir bonus labōrat cum diligentīā et cūrā. 9. Māgnō gaudiō novōs librōs hodiē vident puerī. 10. Rosīs ōrnāta erat puella.

96. 1. The inhabitants were eagerly¹ building a temple. 2. A temple had been built zealously by the inhabitants. 3. The boys toiled industriously and patiently. 4. The Greeks had fought daringly, but were overwhelmed by their neighbors. 5. The sick children were borne carefully into the temple. 6. Joyfully they see the altar of the goddess. 7. The altar had been adorned with roses. 8. On the altar there was a golden cup, the gift of a sick man.

LESSON XIII.

97. Reading Lesson.

THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES.

Rōma, pulchrum Ītaliae oppidum, ā Rōmulō aedificāta est. Incolae Rōmae igitur² appellātī sunt Rōmānī. Validi virī erant Rōmānī et patriam māximē amābant. Saepe cum Sabīnīs, vicīnīs, pūgnābant prō patriā et saepe armīs in bellō superābant. Ōlim victōria diū erat dubia. Nam Sabīnī arma bona habēbant,³ et pilis longis

¹ With eagerness.

placed after one or more words

² Igitur is *postpositive*, that is, is in a sentence.

³ Had.

māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvērunt. Sed fugāti sunt ā Rōmānis et multī sagittīs sunt vulnerāti. Cāra Rōmānis erat victōria.

98. 1. Tell the story, boys, to the master. 2. The boys told the story to the master. 3. Romulus built a fine town in Italy. 4. He called the inhabitants Romans. 5. The Sabines were neighbors of the Romans. 6. And they often fought with Romulus and the Romans. 7. Once they fought a long time with swords and spears. 8. The victory was doubtful, but the Romans wounded and put many to flight.

99.

Vocabulary.

diū, adv. *for a long time,*
long.

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

igitur, conj. *therefore.*

māximē, adv. *especially.*

olim, adv. *once upon a time,*
once, formerly.

patria, -ae, f. *country.*

prō, prep. with abl., *in behalf*
of, for.

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus.*

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines.*

saepe, adv. *often.*

victōria, -ae, f. *victory.*



ARATRUM ANTIQUM.

Nudus ara, sere nudus.—*Vergil.*

LESSON XIV.

The Demonstratives hic and ille.

100.

Paradigms.

hic, *this*.ille, *that*.

SINGULAR.

N.	hic	haec	hōc	N.	ille	illa	illud
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	G.	illius	illius	illius
D.	huic	huic	huic	D.	illi	illi	illi
AC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	AC.	illum	illam	illud
AB.	hōc	hāc	hōc	AB.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL.

N.	hī	hae	haec	N.	illī	illae	illa
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	G.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	D.	illīs	illīs	illīs
AC.	hōs	hās	haec	AC.	illōs	illās	illa
AB.	hīs	hīs	hīs	AB.	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. See how closely the plural forms correspond to those of nouns of the first and second declensions. What resemblances do you discover in the singular?

b. Hic is applied to what is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the first person: hic equus, *this horse* (*near me or belonging to me*).

c. Ille is applied to what is relatively remote from the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the third person: ille equus, *that horse* (*yonder*).

d. Ille, agreeing with a noun and commonly placed after it, sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*.

e. Hic and ille are sometimes used without a noun, in contrast : hīc, *the latter* ; ille, *the former*.

f. The forms of hīc and ille sometimes mean *he, she, it*.

101.

Model Sentences.

1. Hīc puer est laetus, illa puella est maesta, *this boy is merry, that girl is sad*.

2. Dominus et servus sunt amici; ille est albus, hīc niger, *the master and the servant are friends; the former is white, the latter black*.

3. Hōc dōnum deae est grātum, illud deō, *this gift is pleasing to the goddess, that one to the god*.

a. From the above remarks and model sentences it is plain that hīc and ille have two distinct uses : (1) as *adjectives* in agreement with nouns ; (2) alone, as *pronouns*. They are, therefore, sometimes *demonstrative adjectives*, sometimes *demonstrative pronouns*.

102.

Vocabulary.

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans*.

fēmina, -ae, f. *woman*.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *inhabit, live*.

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m. (pl.) *the Helvetians*.

laetus, -a, -um, *glad*.

maestus, -a, -um, *sad*.

nunc, adv. *now*.

pūgna, -ae, f. *battle*.

-que, conj. *and* (9, 3).

tum, adv. *then*.

103. 1. Aeduī et Helvētīi in terrā Galliā¹ ōlim habitābant. 2. Illi fuērunt Rōmānōrum amici, hī inimicī. 3. Ubi sunt nunc illi amīci inimicīque? 4. Ōlim magister studium diligentiamque illius pueri et hūius puellae laudāvit. 5. Illi igitur hunc gladium, huic illud pōcu-

¹ An appositive.

lum dat. 6. Nōnne dominus huic servō dēfessō parvum dōnum dat? nam cum patientiā labōrāvit. 7. Fuitne maesta illa fēmina? 8. Haec fēmina laeta, illa maesta fuit. 9. Nautae illam lūnam novam māgnō cum gaudiō vident. 10. Agricola illōs agrōs hōc novō arātrō arābit. 11. Et filius illius agricolae equōs pigrōs agitābit.

104. 1. The Helvetians fought with the Romans. 2. The former fought for their¹ women and children. 3. The latter fought often for victory.² 4. But victory was not long doubtful in those battles. 5. For the Romans overcame the Helvetians. 6. Then were those poor women in Helvetia sad. 7. For the men of that land had been wounded. 8. The children of those men had³ no⁴ food.



LESSON XV.

The Interrogative Pronoun.

105.*Paradigm.*

quis? *who? which? what?*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

¹ Omit.

³ A form of sum.

² For victory = victōriae causā.

⁴ Say *not*.

106. *Table of Meanings for Reference.*

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

NEUTER.

N. who ?	which ?	what ?
G. of whom ?	of which ?	of what ? whose ?
D. to or for whom ?	to or for which ?	to or for what ?
Ac. whom ?	which ?	what ?
Ab. by, etc., whom ?	by, etc., which ?	by, etc., what ?

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender. They should be referred to only when the meaning of a sentence is not clear after faithful effort. The learner should accustom himself, in making out the meaning of the Latin, to pronounce any Latin word, the sense of which is not evident, as a part of his English sentence. For example, taking sentence 14 under 108, if the meaning of *cūius* is not clear, say, "*cūius* arms has that boy?" Probably this would suggest, "whose arms has that boy?"

107. *Model Sentences.*

1. *Quis amat patriam?* *Who loves his country?*
2. *Quis vir amat patriam?* *What man loves his country?*
3. *Quid amat vir?* *What does the man love?*
4. *Quae dōna puellae sunt grāta?* *What gifts are pleasing to the girl?*

a. Observe that *quis* in the first sentence and *quid* in the third are used as *interrogative pronouns*; that *quis* in the second sentence and *quae* in the fourth are used as *interrogative adjectives*.

b. But *quod* is always used in place of *quid* as an interrogative *adjective*, and often *quī* in place of *quis*; *Quod dōnum puellae est grātum? Quī vir patriam amat?*

c. When forms of the interrogative pronoun are used as adjectives, they agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

108. 1. *Quī hōc templum aedificāvērunt?* 2. *Quī virī hōc templum aedificāvērunt?* 3. *Quid est in illō templō?* 4. *Quae fēmina nōn amat liberōs?* 5. *Cuī dat Mārcus hōc pōculum?* 6. *Quibus virīs nōn est cāra patria?* 7. *Quōs agrōs arat ille agricola?* 8. *Quem laudātis?* 9. *Quid in pōculō habet servus?* 10. *Quam puellam magister laudat?* 11. *Ā quō illi agrī sunt arātī?* 12. *Quō arātrō illōs agrōs agricola arāvit?* 13. *Ā quibus superātī sunt Rōmānī?* 14. *Cūius arma puer ille habet?*

109. 1. Who¹ was a messenger of the gods? 2. Whose messenger was Mercury? 3. Whose shield has that boy? 4. To whom does he give this shield? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have you overcome that man? 7. By what men was this temple built? 8. By whom was this temple built?

¹ *Ne* is not used in a question pronoun or other interrogative that begins with an interrogative word.



ROSTRA.

LESSON XVI.

The Relative Pronoun.

110. *Paradigm.*quī, *who, which, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam quod	quōs	quās	quae
AB.	quō	quā quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

111. *Table of Meanings for Reference.*

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

N. *who, which, that.*G. *of whom, of which, whose.*D. *to or for whom, to or for which.*Ac. *whom, which, that.*AB. *by, etc., whom, which.*112. *Model Sentences.*1. Puer quī laudātur est laetus, *the boy who is praised is glad.*2. Puellae quās laudāmus sunt laetae, *the girls whom we praise are glad.*3. Librī quōs laudāmus sunt bonī, *the books that we praise are good.*4. Cōnsilium quod vir dat laudāmus, *the advice which the man gives we praise.*

a. Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, and that the case of the relative is

sometimes the same as that of the antecedent and sometimes different. In 1, *quī* is subject of *laudātur*; in 2 and 3, *quās* and *quōs* are objects of *laudāmus*; in 4, *quod* is object of *dat*.

113. Rule. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

114. 1. *Servus, quī agrum agricolae arat, est dēfessus.*
 2. *Illi equī, quibus servus hunc agrum arat, sunt nigrī.*
 3. *Dominus, cūius servus in hōc agrō labōrat, est in hortō.* 4. *Puerī, quōrum librōs magister habet, sunt pigrī.*
 5. *Laudāmus illa dōna quae puer puellae dat.* 6. *Puer, quem laudāmus, est laetus.* 7. *Vir, cui sunt multī rēmī, est nauta.* 8. *Fābulae quās nārrāvī hōs puerōs dēlectāvērunt.*

115. 1. This advice which the man gives is not pleasing. 2. Those men, whose town was in Italy, were Romans. 3. Those slaves, to whom the master gives wine, have worked with diligence. 4. The boy by whom the horses were driven is a farmer's son. 5. The girl who is tired is often sad.

Review of Interrogative and Relative.

116.

Vocabulary.

<i>Duīlius, -ī, m. Duilius (59).</i>	<i>reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring</i>
<i>forum, -ī, n. forum.</i>	<i>back, win, gain.</i>
<i>Poenus, -ī, m. a Carthaginian.</i>	<i>rōstrum, -ī, n. beak of a ship,</i>
<i>praeda, -ae, f. booty.</i>	<i>p. 39.</i>

117. 1. Quis forum Rōmānum rōstris ōrnāvit? 2. Forum ōrnāvit Duilius ille, quī māgnam victōriam reportāvit. 3. Quam victōriam reportāvit Duilius? 4. Poenōs superāvit, quōrum patria in Āfricā fuit. 5. Quibus armīs pūgnāvit Duilius? 6. Duilius et Rōmānī gladiis pilisque pūgnāvērunt. 7. Quibus¹ erat illa praeda, quam victōriā reportāvit Duilius? 8. Praeda erat Rōmānis ā quibus est laudātus Duilius.

118. 1. Duilius once gained a great victory. 2. He brought back many beaks of ships, with which he adorned the forum. 3. Duilius, where did you gain that booty? 4. Tell the story to those boys and these girls. 5. "That story," quoth² Duilius, "is a long one. 6. And I am very tired to-day."



LESSON XVII.

The Demonstrative is.

119.

Paradigm.

is, that, this; also he, she, it.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
AC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
AB.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

a. **Is** as a demonstrative adjective is an unemphatic *that* or *this*. On the one hand it approaches *ille*, on the other, but less nearly, *hic*.

¹ Dative.

² Inquit.

b. The relations of *hic*, *is*, and *ille* will be understood from the following illustration : —

The place of hic is is is ille
the speaker.

c. As a pronoun *is* means *he, she, it*. It is frequently used as the antecedent of *quī, who*; *is quī, he who*; *eī quī, they who*.

120.

Model Sentences.

1. *Is servus cum cūrā labōrat, that slave toils with care.*

2. *Patientiam ēius servi laudāmus, the patience of that slave we praise.*

3. *Patientia ēius laudātur, his (of him) patience is praised.*

4. *Is quī patientiam habet laudātur, he who has patience is praised.*

a. Observe the translation of *ēius* in 3. So *eōrum, eārum* must often be translated *their*.

121.

Vocabulary.

benignus, -a, -um, kind.

fidus, -a, -um, faithful.

contentus, -a, -um, contented.

fortiter, adv. bravely.

dā (imperative), give.

malus, -a, -um, bad.

dedit, gave, has given.

territus, -a, -um, frightened.

122. 1. *Eōs virōs amāmus, sed eōrum filiī sunt malī.*

2. *Eae fēminae amantur, sed nōn eārum filiae.* 3. *Nōn bonum fuit cōsiliū eōrum virōrum.* 4. *Is quī est contentus et benignus amīcīs¹ placet.* 5. *Eum amīcī amant laudantque.* 6. *Māximē grātum servō fidō est aurum quod eī dedit dominus.* 7. *Grāta equō est aqua quam*

¹ Observe the dative.

portat agricola benignus. 8. Eī peritī nautae māgnō ventō territī sunt. 9. Quibus est illa praeda quae in forum reportātur? 10. Praeda est eīs quī in pūgnis fortiter pūgnābant.

123. 1. Where do the sons of that man live? 2. "They live in a large town," said¹ Marcus, "and are lazy fellows."² 3. "They do not please the master³; for books do not delight them." 4. "Those books which a friend has given them⁴ do not afford⁵ them⁴ joy." 5. But, good friend, give them good advice. 6. Then they will toil industriously, and will not be sad. 7. Those who labor are often merry. 8. Those boys are not lazy fellows²; they are tired.

¹ Inquit.

² Omit. Adjectives are often used in the plural in Latin, as in English, without a noun: bonī, *the good*, multa, *many things*.

³ Use *magister*.

⁴ See sixth sentence above.

⁵ *do . . . afford = give.*



EQUES.

LESSON XVIII.

Third Declension.

124. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*. *either mute or liquid*

125. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems* and *liquid stems*.

MUTE STEMS.

126.

Paradigms.

prīnceps, m.	rēx, m.	mīles, m.	caput, n.
chief.	king.	soldier.	head.
STEM, prīncip-	rēg-	mīlit-	capit-

SINGULAR.

N. prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G. prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D. prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac. prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
AB. prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

PLURAL.

N. prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G. prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D. prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus
Ac. prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
AB. prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

a. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given.

b. The stem can generally be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular which is always given.

c. Notice that, except in neuters, the endings are the same in all the paradigms (*rēx* = *rēgs*). Neuters have the accusative like the nominative.

d. To decline a noun with a mute stem, add to the stem the endings, as in the paradigms given above.

e. Decline together *is* *prīnceps*, *mīles* *fidus*, *id* *caput*.

127.

Vocabulary.

<i>caput</i> , <i>capitis</i> , n. <i>head</i> .	<i>oppidānus</i> , -ī, m. <i>townsman</i> .
<i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i> , m. <i>leader</i> , <i>general</i> .	<i>oppūgnō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
<i>eques</i> , <i>equitis</i> , m. <i>horseman</i> .	<i>besiege</i> , <i>attack</i> .
<i>expūgnō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus,	<i>pedes</i> , <i>peditis</i> , m. <i>foot-soldier</i> .
<i>take by storm</i> , <i>take</i> , <i>capture</i> .	<i>prīnceps</i> , <i>principis</i> , m. <i>chief</i> ,
	<i>leader</i> .
<i>habuit</i> , <i>had</i> , <i>has had</i> , <i>held</i> ,	<i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i> , m. <i>king</i> .
<i>kept</i> .	<i>tentō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>try</i> ,
<i>mīles</i> , <i>mīlitis</i> , m. <i>soldier</i> , p. 133.	<i>attempt</i> .

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus*.

128. 1. *Ōlim Titus, quī prīnceps erat peritus, oppidum oppūgnābat.* 2. *Fidōs militēs, et¹ equitēs et peditēs, habuit.* 3. *In eō oppidō fuit Sextus rēx cum oppidānis, — virīs, fēminīs, liberisque.* 4. *Diū oppidum, in quō fuit Sextus, expūgnāre tentābat ille dux cum militibus.* 5. *Nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et¹ arma et aurum.* 6. *Prō quibus pūgnābant oppidānī?* 7. *Fortiter pūgnābant illi oppidānī prō liberis fēminisque.* 8. *Caput ducis militum sagittā vulnerātum est.* 9. *Tum territī erant peditēs equitēsque.* 10. *Nunc oppidānī eōs fugant et cum studiō agitant.* 11. *Este contentī, oppidānī, nam dei² fuērunt benignī.*

¹ Et . . . et = both . . . and.

² See 499.

129. 1. There was once a town that¹ had a great amount² of booty. 2. This booty³ a leader tried to gain for his⁴ soldiers. 3. With horsemen and foot-soldiers he attacked the town. 4. But he was wounded by the king, Sextus. 5. His black horse, which he was especially fond⁵ of, was wounded. 6. For a long time he kept his sword and fought bravely. 7. But his frightened soldiers were put to flight by the townsmen.

LESSON XIX.

Third Declension.

MUTE STEMS. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

130.

Paradigms.

pēs, m. <i>foot.</i>	lapis, m. <i>stone.</i>	virtūs, f. <i>manliness.</i>
STEM, ped-	lapid-	virtūt-
SINGULAR.		
N. pēs	lapis	virtūs
G. pedis	lapidis	virtūtis
D. pedī	lapidī	virtūtī
Ac. pedem	lapidem	virtūtem
Ab. pede	lapide	virtūte

¹ Nominative.

⁴ Omit here and in the follow-

² Express a great amount of by one word.

⁵ See p. 20, n. 1.

³ The object.

PLURAL.		
N. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
G. pedum	lapidum	virtutum
D. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus
AC. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
AB. pedibus	lapidibus	virtutibus

a. Notice that the final letter of the stem is dropped in forming the nominative.

b. Notice that the endings are the same as those of the last preceding paradigms.

c. Decline together pēs malus, ille lapis, haec virtūs.

131.

Model Sentences.

1. Puer patientiā laudātur, *the boy is praised on account of (because of) his patience.*

2. Miles ā duce audāciā laudābitur, *the soldier will be praised by the leader for his daring.*

3. Equi frūmenti inopiā labōrant, *the horses suffer from want of grain.*

4. Pedes longā viā est dēfessus, *the foot-soldier is tired with the long march.*

a. Observe that patientiā, audāciā, inopiā, and viā denote the cause. Notice the various translations of these ablatives: *on account of, because of, for, from, with.*

132. Rule. — *The ablative is used to express cause.*

133. We have now seen that, —

1. The ablative of *agent* answers the question *by whom?*
2. The ablative of *means* or *instrument* answers the question *by what?*
3. The ablative of *manner* answers the question *how?*
4. The ablative of *cause* answers the question *why?*

134.

Vocabulary.

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m.	lapis, lapidis, m. <i>stone.</i>
youth (152, a).	pēs, pedis, m. <i>foot.</i>
celeritās, celeritātis, f. <i>swift-</i>	properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
ness, speed.	<i>hasten.</i>
cōstantia, -ae, f. <i>firmness.</i>	servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	<i>save.</i>
<i>blame, find fault with.</i>	vīgintī (indecl.) <i>twenty.</i>
fōrtūna, -ae, f. <i>fortune, good</i>	virtūs, virtūtis, f. <i>courage,</i>
fuga, -ae, f. <i>flight.</i> [fortune.	<i>virtue, bravery.</i>
inopia, -ae, f. <i>want, lack.</i>	vīta, -ae, f. <i>life.</i>

135. 1. Illi militēs ab hōc pīncipe fugā culpābantur. 2. Quis eōs virtūte culpābit? 3. Quōs celeritāte dux laudābat? 4. Equitēs laudābat, quōrum equī nunc frūmentī inopiā labōrant. 5. Pedēs hōrum peditum lapidibus vulnerātī erant. 6. Māgnā celeritāte in illud oppidum properābant amici et inimicī. 7. Eī amici Mārci bonā fōrtūnā sunt contentī. 8. Dux cōstantiā dēlectābātur militum quī fortiter pūgnāverant. 9. Oppidānī lapidibus vulnerātī sunt. 10. Vīgintī adulēscētēs vītā pīncipis servāvērunt. 11. Oppidum expūgnāre tentābat, sed caput sagittā vulnerātum est.

a. Point out four different uses of the ablative above, and tell how you can distinguish them.

136. 1. The king was delighted with the courage of those foot-soldiers. 2. But they were tired out with the march,¹ which had been a long one.² 3. And had

¹ See p. 20, n. 1.

² Omit.

suffered from lack of food. 4. The feet of the poor horses had been wounded by the stones on the road. 5. Who will bring for them¹ some² water and grain? 6. Bring food, boys, for the men, and water for the tired horses. 7. The food and the water were speedily³ brought by the good boys.

137.

Colloquium.

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

brother

little sister

F. Fābulam bonam amīcus mihi hodiē nārrāvit.

to me

S. Dē quō tibi nārrāvit amīcus?

about

to you

F. Dē Īcarō, Daedali filiō, quī in Crētā habitābat.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus

also

in Latin

puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās

by no means

most unfortunate

wings

quās cērā aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit sed cērā

with wax had fitted

flew away

sōle liquefacta est. Tum . . .

by the sun was melted

then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna; itaque haesitō.

words

and so

I hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam

well, then

language

intellegō.

I understand.

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrābō, nōn Anglicē.

¹ eīs.

² Omit.

either of the three ways illus-

³ This may be expressed in

trated in 92.

LESSON XX.

Third Declension.

LIQUID STEMS.

DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE.

138.

Paradigms.

cōnsul, m. <i>consul.</i>	pater, m. <i>father.</i>	vīctor, m. <i>victor.</i>	homō, m. <i>man.</i>
STEM, cōnsul-	patr-	vīctor-	homin-
SINGULAR.			
N. cōnsul	pater	vīctor	homō
G. cōnsulis	patris	vīctoris	hominis
D. cōsulī	patri	vīctorī	hominī
AC. cōnsulem	patrem	vīctōrem	hominem
AB. cōnsule	patre	vīctōre	homine
PLURAL.			
N. cōnsulēs	patrēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
G. cōnsulum	patrum	vīctorum	hominum
D. cōnsu'libus	patribus	vīctoribus	homi'nibus
AC. cōnsulēs	patrēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
AB. cōnsu'libus	patribus	vīctoribus	homi'nibus

vulnus, n. <i>wound.</i>	corpus, n. <i>body.</i>
STEM, vulner-	corpor-
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
N. vulnus	corpus
G. vulneris	corporis
D. vulnerī	corporī
AC. vulnus	corpus
AB. vulnere	corpore
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
vulnera	corpora
vulnerum	corporum
vulne'ribus	corpo'ribus
vulnera	corpora
vulne'ribus	corpo'ribus

a. Observe that the endings in the preceding paradigms are the same as in the paradigms of mute stems.

139.

Model Sentences.

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Galba agricola fuit m̄agnā
diligentiā. | } | Galba was a farmer of
great industry. |
| 2. Galba agricola fuit m̄agnae
diligentiae. | | |
| 3. Cornēlia fuit parvis pedi-
bus. | } | Cornelia was (a woman)
with small feet. |
| 4. Cornēlia fuit parvōrum pe-
dum. | | |

a. Observe that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is used *with an adjective* for the purpose of description. These sentences, then, illustrate the *descriptive ablative* and the *descriptive genitive*.

140. Rule.—*The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

a. You cannot say in Latin, as we do in English, *a man of courage, of honor, of property*. An adjective or its equivalent must be used : *a man of great courage*, etc.

141.

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ad, prep. with acc., near,
towards, to. | pater, patris, m. father. |
| annus, -ī, m. year. | Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, m. Scipio. |
| cōsul, cōsulis, m. consul. | septendecim, seventeen. |
| flūmen, flūminis, n. river. | summus, -a, -um, highest,
greatest. |
| Hannibal, -alis, m. Hannibal. | tener, -era, -erum, tender. |
| Hispania, -ae, f. Spain. | Tīcinus, -ī, m. the Tīcinus. |
| homō, hominis, m. man. | vīctor, vīctoris, m. victor. |

homō, man, as distinguished from the lower animals.

vir (57), man, as distinguished from woman ; hero.

142. 1. Hannibal et Scipiō ōlim erant clārī ducēs.
 2. Ille erat Poenus, quī diū Rōmānōs superāre tentābat.
 3. Hīc erat Rōmānus, cūius virtūs patriam servāvit.
 4. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. 5. Puerī¹ annis teneris
 fuērunt in pūgnīs, hīc in Ītaliā, ille in Hispāniā.
 6. Scipiō patrem in pūgnā ad Ticinum flūmen servāvit.
 7. Tum fuit adulēscēns septendecim annōrum. 8. Hanni-
 bal, adulēscēns² nōn vigintī annis, oppida in Hispāniā
 oppūgnāvit.

143. 1. The consul's soldiers fought in Italy and
 Africa. 2. The consul had a son Scipio of tender years,
 who fought in a battle with the Carthaginians. 3. In
 that battle the soldiers of the Romans were not the
 victors. 4. They were put to flight by Hannibal's horse-
 men. 5. But they were men of the greatest courage.



LESSON XXI.

144. Reading Lesson.

· SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL.

In this lesson and some of the following, less important
 words that need not be committed to memory are given only
 in the general vocabulary.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō Āfricānus Māior,³ adulēscēns
 septendecim annōrum, ad Ticinum flūmen vitam patris
 servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsī⁴ fortiter pūgnāvit. Postea
 Carthāginem Novam, oppidum in Hispāniā expūgnāvit.

¹ When boys. ² When a youth. ³ The Elder. ⁴ Of Cannae.

Obsidibus Hispānōrum benignus erat et eis libērtātem dedit. Nōn minus fēliciter in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs superāvit. Ad Zamam Scipiō et Hannibal castra habuērunt.¹ Clārum est illud colloquium quod ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scipiōne superātī et fugātī sunt. Scipiō triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus est appellātus.

145. 1. Who saved his father by his bravery near the river Ticinus? 2. Scipio, who was then a youth of seventeen years. 3. Whom did he afterwards defeat? 4. He defeated Hannibal, that famous Carthaginian. 5. The victory which Scipio won was famous. 6. Famous was the triumph that Scipio had.² 7. And the people called him Africanus.

146.*Vocabulary.*

castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.) <i>camp.</i>	libērtās, libērtātis, f. <i>liber-</i>
colloquium, -ī, n. <i>conversa-</i>	<i>ty, freedom.</i>
<i>tion, colloquy.</i>	obses, obsidis, m. <i>hostage.</i>
fēliciter, adv. <i>luckily, suc-</i>	populus, -ī, m. <i>people.</i>
<i>cessfully.</i>	

147.*Colloquium.*

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Poenus?
or

D. Fuit Poenus et ā Scipiōne victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr fuit? cūr nōn est in Āfricā?

why

¹ Had.

² Habuit.

D. Quia Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne dēlēta est.
 because was destroyed.

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?
 how many names

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina: Pūblius Cornēlius
 three

Scīpiō.

P. Rēctē, mī puer, prænōmen *Pūblius*; *Cornēlius*
 correct first name
 nōmen gentile; *Scīpiō* cōgnōmen.
 family cognomen

D. Nōne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō *Āfricānus*?
 sometimes

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dicēbant Rōmānī
 cōgnōmen secundum. moreover called
 second



SCIPIO.



HANNIBAL.

LESSON XXII.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

STEMS IN Ĭ.

148.

Paradigms.

īgnis, m. <i>fire.</i>	hostis, m. <i>enemy.</i>	nūbēs, f. <i>cloud.</i>	mare, n. <i>sea.</i>
STEM. īgni-	hosti-	nūbi-	mari-

SINGULAR.

N. īgnis	hostis	nūbēs	mare
G. īgnis	hostis	nūbis	maris
D. īgnī	hostī	nūbī	marī
Ac. īgnem	hostem	nūbem	mare
Ab. īgnī, e	hoste	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

N. īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs	maria
G. īgnium	hostium	nūbium	—
D. īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus
Ac. īgnīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	maria
Ab. īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus

animal, n. *animal.*calcar, n. *spur.*

STEM. animāli-

calcāri-

	SING.	PLU.		SING.	PLU.
N.	animal	animālia		calcar	calcāria
G.	animālis	animālium		calcāris	calcārium
D.	animālī	animālibus		calcārī	calcāribus
Ac.	animal	animālia		calcar	calcāria
Ab.	animālī	animālibus		calcārī	calcāribus

a. Compare the declension endings of *hostis* and *nūbēs* with those of mute stems (126, 130, 138). In the singular, except in the nominative, which is variable, the endings are the same. What are the differences in the plural?

b. Nouns in *-ēs* (gen. *-is*) are declined like *nūbēs*.

c. How does the declension of *īgnis* differ from that of *hostis*? The most common nouns declined like *īgnis* are *avis*, *bird*, *cīvis*, *citizen*, *fīnis*, *end*.

d. A few nouns in *-is* have both *-im* and *-em* in the accusative singular. These will be noted as they occur.

e. As a guide to the learner, all words having *i*-stems will be followed by the stem in the succeeding vocabularies.

149.

Vocabulary.

animal, <i>-ālīs</i> , n. (<i>animālī-</i>), <i>animal</i> .	<i>fīnis</i> , <i>-is</i> , m. (<i>fīni-</i>), <i>end</i> , <i>border</i> , pl. <i>territories</i> .
animus, <i>-ī</i> , m. <i>mind</i> , <i>soul</i> .	hostis, <i>-is</i> , m. (<i>hostī-</i>), <i>ene-</i> <i>my</i> .
calcar, <i>-āris</i> , n. (<i>calcārī-</i>), <i>spur</i> , p. 186.	<i>īgnis</i> , <i>-is</i> , m. (<i>īgnī-</i>), <i>fire</i> .
cīvis, <i>-is</i> , m. and f. (<i>cīvi-</i>), <i>citizen</i> .	mare, <i>-is</i> , n. (<i>marī-</i>), <i>sea</i> .
concitō, <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>rouse up</i> , <i>spur</i> .	<i>nāvis</i> , <i>-is</i> , f. (<i>nāvi-</i>), [acc. <i>-em</i> or <i>-im</i> , abl. <i>-ī</i> or <i>e</i>], <i>ship</i> , pp. 79, 88.
ex (<i>ē</i>), prep. with abl., <i>out</i> <i>of</i> , <i>from</i> .	<i>necō</i> , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>kill</i> .
<i>hostis</i> , general word for <i>enemy</i> ; a <i>public enemy</i> .	<i>nūbēs</i> , <i>-is</i> , f. (<i>nūbi-</i>), <i>cloud</i> .
<i>inimīcus</i> , a <i>private</i> or <i>personal enemy</i> ; opposed to <i>amicus</i> .	

150. 1. *Civēs nūbem equitum in fine terrae vident.*
2. *Quid habent eī equitēs in animō?* 3.¹ *Quid eīs est in animō?* 4. *Equōs calcāribus concitant et oppidum expūgnābunt.* 5. *In hōc oppidō multī erant hominēs quī rēgem inopiā armōrum culpābant.* 6. *Civēs māximē territī sunt (were terrified) et ad mare summā celestātē properāvērunt.* 7. *Multa animālia ab hostibus*

¹ *What do they intend, or mean?*

lapidibus necāta sunt. 8. Necātī sunt in fugā vīginti cīvēs. 9. Iī quōrum vīta servāta est nunc vident in oppidō māgnū ignem.

151. 1. A citizen sees a great ship on the sea. 2. In the ship that he sees there are many enemies. 3. Their¹ chief is a man of great stature.² 4.³ What have those soldiers in mind? 5. They are hastening from the ship upon⁴ the land. 6. They have horses and spurs. 7. They will try to take this town with fire and sword. 8. Will not the firmness of the citizens save the town?



LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension.

STEMS IN ĭ. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

152.

Paradigms.

	cliēns, m.	urbs, f.	arx, f.	nox, f.
	<i>dependent.</i>	<i>city.</i>	<i>citadel.</i>	<i>night.</i>
STEM.	clienti-	urbi-	arci-	nocti-

SINGULAR.

N.	cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
G.	clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D.	clientī	urbī	arci	noctī
Ac.	clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
Ab.	cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

¹ Eōrum.

² Use corpus.

³ See 150, 2 and 3.

⁴ In with acc.

PLURAL.

N. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G. clientium	urbium	arcium	noctium
D. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus
AC. clientīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
AB. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

a. Most nouns in -ns and -rs are declined like those above. *Parēs*, *parent*, has the genitive plural *parentum*.

b. Besides *nox*, three common monosyllables in -s or -x following a vowel, *mūs* (gen. *mūris*), *moīse*, *nix* (gen. *nivis*), *snow*, and *os* (gen. *ossis*), *bone*, have -ium in the genitive plural.

153. A review of the paradigms of nouns with i-stems indicates that to i-stems belong

1. Nouns in -is and -ēs not increasing in the genitive.¹
2. Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.
3. Nouns in -ns. So also those in -rs.
4. Monosyllables in -s or -x following a consonant.

a. Decline together *nigra nūbēs*, *animal māgnum*, *urbs pulchra*, *illa arx*, *hōc mare*.

154. *Model Sentences.*

1. *Hieme et aestāte hominēs labōrant*, *men toil in winter and summer.*

2. *Primā lūce multōs hostēs vident*, *at daybreak (first light) they see many enemies.*

3. *His vigintī annīs aedificātae sunt multae urbēs*, *within these twenty years many cities have been built.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in the above sentences are expressions of time. They answer the questions, *When?* *in*, or *within what time?*

¹ That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

155. Rule. — *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

156.*Vocabulary.*

aestās, aestātis, f. *summer.*

arx, arcis, f. (arci-), *citadel,*
fortress.

avis, -is, f. (avi-) *bird.*

ēheu, interj. *alas!*

hiems, hiemis, f. *winter.*

hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*

lūx, lūcis, f. *light.*

nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), *night.*

prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*

recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *re-*
fresh.

secundus, -a, -um, *second.*

tempus, -oris, n. *time.*

urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), *city.*

volō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus,¹ *fly.*

157. 1. Hieme ventus mare et nūbēs agitat. 2. Aestāte somnus est grātus hominibus dēfessīs. 3. In mari nūbem avium primā lūce vident puerī. 4. Hōrā secundā vident animālia māgnō corpore. 5. Hominēs territī equōs concitant calcāribus. 6. Primā nocte² avēs ex mari in terram volant. 7. Cōsul filium virtūte laudāvit. 8. In urbe est ignis quem hostēs vident ex fine terrae. 9. Hostēs oppūgnābunt arcem quam in fine urbis vident. 10. Quō tempore arx oppūgnāta est? 11. Primā hōrā vīgintī, secundā septendecim hominēs ā victōribus sunt necātī.

158. 1. Where had those arms been with which the citizens fought? 2. They had been in the highest citadel. 3. Who is that leader whom the citizens see? 4. At the second hour of the night there will be a big moon. 5. Then by the light of the moon they will attack this city boldly.³ 6. They mean⁴ to take the city

¹ See p. 96, n. 1. ² See 3 above. ³ See 93. ⁴ See 150, 3.

and the citadel. 7. Alas! will the tender women and children be slain by the enemy? 8. On that night the bodies of the weary citizens were not refreshed by sleep.



LESSON XXIV.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

159.

GENDER.

1. Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, and -es increasing in the genitive (commonly -itis, -idis), are masculine.

2. But nouns in -dō, -gō, together with abstract and collective nouns in -iō, are feminine.

3. Nouns in -ās, -ēs not increasing in the genitive, -is, -ūs, -s following a consonant, and -x, are feminine.

4. Nouns in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs, are neuter.

a. The above rules are subordinate to the general rules of gender (13).

b. Distinguish carefully nouns ending in ūs and ūs.

c. The rules will assist in remembering the gender of nouns, but there are many exceptions which the learner should carefully note as they occur.

160. Table for Review of Nouns of Third Declension.

MASCULINE.

- *dux, ducis, m. *leader*.
 eques, -itis, m. *horseman*.
 miles, -itis, m. *soldier*.
 pedes, -itis, m. *foot-soldier*.
 *princeps, -ipis, m. *chief*.
 *rēx, rēgis, m. *king*.
 *lapis, -idis, m. *stone*.
 pēs, pedis, m. *foot*.
 *adulēscēns, -entis, m. (adulē-
 scenti-), *youth*.
 *cōsul, -ulis, m. *consul*.
 *Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal*.
 obses, -idis, m. *hostage*.
 pater, patris, m. *father*.
 Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio*.
 victor, -ōris, m. *victor*.
 homō, -inis, m. *man*.
 *cīvis, -is, m. (cīvi-), *citizen*.
 ✕ *finis, -is, m. (fini-), *end*.
 *hostis, -is, m. (hosti-), *enemy*.
 ✕ *īgnis, -is, m. (īgni-), *fire*.
 *cliēns, -entis, m. (clienti-),
dependent.

FEMININE.

- celeritās, -ātis, f. *quickness*.
 virtūs, -ūtis, f. *virtue, courage*.
 aetās, -ātis, f. *age*.
 avis, -is, f. (avi-), *bird*.
 nāvis, -is, f. (nāvi-), *ship*.
 nūbēs, -is, f. (nūbi-), *cloud*.
 aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*.
 arx, arcis, f. (arci-), *citadel*.
 lūx, lūcis, f. *light*.
 nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), *night*.
 urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), *city*.
 libērtās, -ātis, f. *liberty*.

NEUTER.

- caput, -itis, n. *head*.
 flūmen, -inis, n. *river*.
 vulnus, -eris, n. *wound*.
 corpus, -oris, n. *body*.
 animal, -ālis, n. (animāli-),
animal.
 calcar, -āris, n. (calcāri-),
spur.
 mare, -is, n. (mari-), *sea*.
 tempus, -oris, n. *time*.

a. Exceptions to the rules of gender (159) are starred. See how many of these are covered by the general rules for gender (13).

b. Prove the gender of nouns not starred by applying the proper rule to each.

c. Make a list of all the above nouns having mute stems, and another of i-stems.

161.

Anecdote.

CICERO.

Cicerō, vir facētus,¹ ioca² amābat. Ōlim Lentulum generum,³ quī parvae statūrae⁴ erat, cum gladiō longō videt. “Quis,” inquit⁵ Cicerō, “generum meum ad illum gladium adligāvit?”⁶

162.

Colloquium.

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

brother little sister.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?

F. Polyphēmus filius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in insulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

ploughman

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Polyphēmus. .

neither

nor

S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus nāvigābat.

F. Errāvisti, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor et māgnās ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit ingentis corporis et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum oculum stīpite perforāvit.

You are mistaken

shepherd

of sheep

flocks

huge

one

only

eye

Ulysses

crafty

his one

stake

bored out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!

Oh dear!

poor

¹ Witty.

² Jokes.

³ Son-in-law.

⁴ Stature.

⁵ Said.

⁶ Tied.

LESSON XXV.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

163.

*Paradigms.**audāx, bold. STEM audāci-*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D. audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
AC. audācem	audāx	audāciās, -ēs	audācia
AB. audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

prūdēns, prudent. STEM prūdentī-

N. prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prudentia
G. prūdentis	prūdentis	prudentium	prudentium
D. prūdentī	prūdentī	prudentibus	prudentibus
AC. prudentem	prūdēns	prudentiās, -ēs	prudentia
AB. prūdentī, -e	prūdentī, -e	prudentibus	prudentibus

brevis, short. STEM brevi-

N. brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
G. brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
D. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
AC. brevem	breve	breviās, -ēs	brevia
AB. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

ācer, keen, eager, active. STEM ācri-

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
AC. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācriās, -ēs	ācriās, -ēs	ācria
AB. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Adjectives declined like **audāx** and **prūdēns**, having one form in the nominative singular for all genders, are called *adjectives of one termination*; those declined like **brevis**, *adjectives of two terminations*; those declined like **ācer**, *adjectives of three terminations*.

b. Like what noun in the paradigms of *i*-stems are **audāx** and **prūdēns** declined in the masculine and feminine? How does the neuter differ in declension from **mare**?

c. Observe that adjectives of two terminations (like **brevis**), and also those of three terminations (like **ācer**), have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

NOTE. — Adjectives of one termination have the genitive indicated in the vocabularies. The nominatives only of the others are given.

164.

Vocabulary.

ā or ab , prep. with abl., <i>from, by</i> .	iuvō , <i>-āre</i> , iūvī , iūtus , <i>help</i> ,
audāx , <i>-ācis</i> , <i>bold, daring</i> .	<i>aid</i> .
brevis , <i>-e</i> , <i>short, brief</i> .	mox , adv. <i>presently</i> .
comes , <i>-itis</i> , m. <i>comrade</i> .	occupō , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātus</i> ,
convocō , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>call</i>	<i>seize, take</i> .
<i>together, summon</i> .	parō , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvī</i> , <i>-ātus</i> , <i>get</i>
cūr , adv. <i>why?</i>	<i>ready, prepare for</i> .
frāter , frātris , m. <i>brother</i> .	prūdēns , <i>-entis</i> , <i>wise, prudent</i> .
gravis , <i>-e</i> , <i>heavy, severe</i> .	vulnus , <i>-eris</i> , n. <i>wound</i> .

165. 1. **Brevī tempore principēs audācēs populum convocābunt.** 2. **Laudāmus prūdentem populum qui bellum parat.** 3. **Militēs ācrēs castra māgnā cum cūrā parāvērunt.** 4. **Dā, Ō Hannibal, obsidibus libērtātem.** 5. **Frāter ducis gravī vulnere¹ ad castra portātus est.**

¹ Ablative of cause.

6. Nūntius ā liberō populō celeritāte laudātur. 7. Illa castra hostium primā lūce occupābimus. 8. Tum civēs virtūte iuvābimus. 9. Quis amīcōs iuvāre nōn tentābit?

- 166.** 1. The war will be short, for the leader is wise.
 2. He will try to seize the camp of the enemy. 3. Why will the camp be seized by the prudent commander?
 4. He will aid the hostages, who are now in the camp.
 5. His brother will help him in this war. 6. His comrade is now getting ready arms — shields, spears, arrows.
 7. Presently the eager soldiers will be called together.

LESSON XXVI.

Ablative of Specification.

167. *Model Sentences.*

1. Rōmānī Gallōs virtūte superābant, *the Romans surpassed the Gauls in bravery.*

2. Puer comitī dīligentiā est similis, *the boy is like his comrade in industry.*

3. Bibulus nōmine tantum cōsul fuit, *Bibulus was consul only in name.*

a. Virtūte limits superābant in meaning. In the same way dīligentiā and nōmine limit similis and cōsul. These ablatives answer the question *in what respect?* The ablative thus used is called the ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

168. Rule. — *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote in what respect a thing is true.*

169.

Vocabulary.

ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, shrewd.</i>	pār, paris, <i>equal (to)</i> <i>adj.</i>
fortis, -e, <i>brave, strong.</i>	scientiā, -ae, f. <i>knowledge, skill.</i>
ingēns, -entis, <i>huge, great.</i>	similis, -e, <i>like, similar.</i>
nōmen, -inis, n. <i>name.</i>	Often with dative.
numerus, -ī, m. <i>number.</i>	terror, -ōris, m. <i>alarm, terror.</i>
omnis, -e, <i>all, whole.</i> <i>adj.</i>	

170. 1. Ille pedes comitem celeritāte pedum superāvit.
 2. Is miles ab hōc oppidānō audāciā superātus est.
 3. Cōsul est rēgī pār belli scientiā. 4. Brevi tempore
 in urbe terror fuit ingēns. 5. Nam hostēs audācēs numerō
 cīvēs superāvērunt. 6. Omnēs ducēs, hominēs fortēs
 prūdentēsq̄ue, multa vulnera habent. 7. Quis igitur eōs
 inopiā virtūtis nunc culpābit? 8. Nunc somnus grātus
 est ei fortī militi, quī animō et corpore est dēfessus.
 9. Laudāte principem ācri animō¹ et corpore¹ validō.

171. 1. Hannibal, leader of the Carthaginians, sur-
 passed the Romans in skill in war.² 2. He was a
 man of shrewd mind. 3. In courage he was like his
 father. 4. Who was his³ equal in daring? 5. In a short
 time his name was a terror to the enemy on account of
 his many victories. 6. But in good fortune he was not
 equal to Scipio. 7. In what great battle was he defeated
 by that Roman?

¹ See 140.

² Genitive

³ Ei.



GLADIUS.

LESSON XXVII.

Second Conjugation. — Ē-Verbs.

Moneō (stem **monē**), *advise*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**.

172. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (512).

a. Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō**. To inflect **moneō**, you have only to remember that the stem vowel is *ē* instead of *ā*.

173. 1. **Monet**, **monēbat**, **monēbit**. 2. **Monētur**, **monēbatur**, **monēbitur**. 3. **Monent**, **monēbant**, **monēbunt**. 4. **Monentur**, **monēbantur**, **monēbuntur**. 5. **Moneō**, **monēbam**, **monēbō**. 6. **Moneor**, **monēbar**, **monēbor**. 7. **Monēmus**, **monēmur**. 8. **Monēbāmus**, **monēbāmur**. 9. **Monēbimus**, **monēbimur**. 10. **Monē**, **monēre**. 11. **Monēte**, **monēmini**. 12. **Monēre**, **monēri**.

a. Like **moneō** inflect in both voices the following: **habeō**, *have, hold*; **videō**, *see*; **terreō**, *frighten*; **moveō**, *move*.

174. 1. He sees, he is seen. 2. He was seeing, he was seen. 3. He will see, he will be seen. 4. They are seeing, they are seen. 5. To have, to see, to frighten. 6. To be had, to be seen, to be frightened. 7. We shall see, we shall be seen. 8. You were seeing, you were seen. 9. Does he hold? Is he seen? Is he frightened? 10. See (thou), see (ye). 11. Be thou seen, be ye seen.

175.

Vocabulary.

antiquus, -a, -um, *old, of old, ancient.* [increase.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, habeō, -ēre, -uī, habitus, *hold, have, keep.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *wait, remain, stay.*

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

quoque, conj. *too, also.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *frighten.*

vetus, veteris, *old.*

videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, *see.*

antiquus, *ancient, old*, as opposed to *modern, new.*

vetus, *old*, as opposed to *recent, young.*

176. 1. Incolae terrēbantur et omnia quae habēbant ex urbe movēbant. 2. Secundā noctis hōrā ingēns ignis omnibus ā cīvibus vidēbātur. 3. Ubi fuit is ignis quem cīvēs vidēbant? 4. Ignis fuit in illā arce vetere quam hominēs antiquī aedificāverant. 5. Ignem ventus māgnus auget; augētur igitur cīvium illōrum terror. 6. Quī aquam portābunt? 7. Cūr manētis? 8. Nōne sunt in illā arce vīgintī hominēs? 9. Sine morā aqua ab oppidānis et servis fidis portābātur. 10. Fēliciter brevī tempore ii virī fortēs in arce servātī sunt. 11. Omnēs cīvēs gaudent (*rejoice*) et nōs (*we*) quoque gaudēmus.



POCULUM.

LESSON XXVIII.

177. Reading Lesson.¹

THE VOLSCIANS.

Ōlim Volscī, Rōmānōrum hostēs audācēs, urbī Rōmae² ingentem terrōrem praebēbant. Terror subitus erat, nam hostēs prope erant. Tum cōsul sine morā iuventūtem armat, complet cibō urbem, omnia³ tūta et tranquilla praebet. Interim hostēs aedificia multa in agris dēlent. Ita terrōrem augment rūsticōrum quōs civēs frūstrā iuvāre tentant. Hostēs ridēbant et gaudēbant, sed rūstici lūgēbant.

178. 1. Who are causing great terror to this city? 2. The enemy are close at hand, consul; arm the youth without delay. 3. The youth were armed speedily by the consul. 4. He will fill the city with food, he will render all things in the city safe. 5. In the meantime the enemy were destroying many buildings in the fields. 6. The alarm of the country people is increased. 7. For the enemy are increasing in number.

179. Vocabulary.

aedificium, -ī, n. *building.*compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus,
*fill, fill up, cover.*dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus,
*destroy.*frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*interim, adv. *in the mean-
time.*iuventūs, -ūtis, f. *youth.*lūgeō, -ēre, lūxi, —, *mourn.*praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, fur-
*nish, render, cause.*prope, adv. *near.*rideō, -ēre, risi, risus, *laugh.*rūsticus, -ī, m. *peasant.*tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*¹ See introductory note to 144.² Appositive.³ All things.

LESSON XXIX.

The Locative Case.

180. *Model Sentences.*

1. Caesar Rōmae mānsit, *Caesar remained at Rome.*
2. Athēnīs erat templum pulchrum, *at Athens there was a fine temple.*
3. Cōnsul rūri habitābat, *the consul was living in the country.*

a. Names of towns and a few other words have a form called the Locative, which expresses the idea of *at, in, on.*

b. The Locative has the following endings :

	SING.	PLU.
First declension	-ae	-īs
Second declension	-ī	-īs
Third declension	-ī(-e)	-ibus

181. *Vocabulary.*

Athēna, -ae, f. <i>Athena</i> (a goddess).	iaceō, -ēre, iacui, —, <i>lie.</i>
Athēnae, -ārum, f. (pl.) <i>Athens.</i>	Trallēs, -ium, f. (pl.) <i>Tralles.</i>
Capua, -ae, f. <i>Capua.</i>	Zama, -ae, f. <i>Zāma.</i>
Carthāgō, -inis, f. <i>Carthage.</i>	domī, <i>at home</i> (499).
Corinthus, -ī, f. <i>Corinth.</i>	humī, <i>on the ground.</i>
Delphī, -ōrum, m. (pl.) <i>Delphi.</i>	militiae, <i>in the field</i> (of war).
	rūri, <i>in the country.</i>

182. 1. Corinthī clārum vidēbāmus templum quod nunc dēlētur. 2. Statua Athēnae antiquīs temporibus Athēnīs vidēbātur. 3. Ubi nunc est illa statua quam olim vidēbant hominēs? 4. Rōmānī Scīpiōnis victōriīs

fuērunt laeti. 5. Quem clārum principem necāvērunt Poenī Carthāginī? 6. Principem Rōmānum, cui nōmen fuit Rēgulus, necāvērunt. 7. Meus frāter domī manēbat. 8. Humī diū iacēbant militēs quī vulnera multa et gravia habēbant. 9. Rōmānī domī militiaeque clārī fuērunt. 10. Frūstrā diū Trallibus manēbimus.

183. 1. Hannibal kept the horsemen and infantry at Capua. 2. The fear of Hannibal kept the citizens in the city. 3. Meanwhile peasants furnished grain for the horses, food for the men. 4. At Zama in Africa Hannibal was defeated by Scipio. 5. At Delphi there was a famous temple. 6. By whom was the temple at Delphi built? 7. Why are you lying on the ground, lazy boys? 8. Men, be brave at home and in the field.



LESSON XXX.

Second Conjugation. — *Continued.*

184. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *moneō* (512).

185. 1. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit. 2. Monuērunt, monuerant, monuerint. 3. Monuī, monitus sum. 4. Monuerit, monitus erit. 5. Monueram, monitus eram. 6. Monuistī, monuerās, monueris. 7. Monitus est, monita erat, monita erit. 8. Monuisse, monitus esse.

186. 1. Mōvi, mōveram, mōverō. 2. Mōtus sum, mōtus eram, mōtus erō. 3. Praebitus est, praebitus erat,

praebitus erit. 4. Vidit, viderat, viderit. 5. Visus est, visus erat, visus erit. 6. Terruērunt, terruerant, terruerint. 7. Territī sunt, territī erant, territī erunt. 8. Dēlētum est, dēlētum erat, dēlētum erit.

187. 1. We had, we had had, we shall have had. 2. They had, they had had, they will have had. 3. We saw, we were seen. 4. We had seen, we had been seen. 5. We shall have seen, we shall have been seen. 6. He filled, he increased. 7. They remained, they mourned.

188.*Vocabulary.*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar*, p. 117.

postea, adv. *afterwards*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,

poterat, *could, was able*.

remove, go away.

poterant, *could, were able*.

Pompēius, -ēi, m. *Pompey*.

quia, conj. *because*.

189. 1. Sine scūtis militēs pūgnāre nōn poterant. 2. Hannibal Capuae sine multō cibō manēre nōn poterat. 3. Cūr Hannibal in Āfricā dēmigrāvit ex Ītaliā? 4. Quia in Āfricā erat māgnus terror. 5. Caesar quī Rōmae mānserat māgnā cum celeritāte ex urbe properāvit. 6. Caesar multum ex Galliā aurum portāverat. 7. Id aurum, quod ā Caesare portātum erat, in antiquō templō habitum est. 8. Hōc aurum Caesar ex templō postea mōvit. 9. Caesar secundō bellī annō Pompēium quī fuit inimicus superāvit.



ARCUS.

LESSON XXXI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

190. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

191.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus (alto-), <i>high</i>	altior	altissimus
brevis (brevi-), <i>short</i>	brevior	brevissimus
audāx (audāci-), <i>bold</i>	audācior	audācissimus

a. Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem vowel, if there is one, and adding -ior; the superlative by adding -issimus.

miser (misero-), <i>wretched</i>	miserior	miserrimus
ācer (ācri-), <i>keen</i>	ācrior	ācerrimus

b. Observe that adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the positive. The comparative is formed as in adjectives in -us.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

192.*Paradigm.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrā
G. altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D. altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
AC. altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
AB. altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

a. The comparative of all adjectives except **plūs**, *more* (207), is declined like **altior**; the superlative like **bonus**.

b. Compare and decline in the comparative, **cārus**, **grātus**, **fortis**, **prūdēns**.

193.*Model Sentences.*

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Virtūs hominibus cārior est | } <i>virtue is more precious to</i> |
| quam aurum, | |
| 2. Virtūs hominibus cārior est | } <i>men than gold.</i> |
| aurō , | |
| 3. Via est brevior , <i>the way is rather (or too) short.</i> | |
| 4. Via est brevissima , <i>the way is very short.</i> | |

a. Observe that the comparative may be followed, as in the first sentence, by **quam**. If **quam** is used, the two objects compared (**virtūs** and **aurum**) are in the same case.

b. But **quam** may be omitted, as in the second sentence; then the comparative is followed by the ablative. The ablative can be used only in place of **quam** and the nominative, or **quam** and the accusative.

194. Rule. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (than) is omitted.*

c. Observe in 3 and 4 an occasional use of the comparative meaning *too* or *rather*, and of the superlative meaning *very*.

195.*Vocabulary.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. *commander, general.* *in chief*

iter, **itineris**, n. *way, march, journey* (499).

mōns, **montis**, m. (**monti**-), *mountain* (496). *See 159*

nix, **nivis**, f. (**nivi**-), *snow.*

Padus, -ī, m. *the Po.*

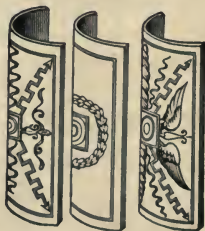
sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

ūtilis, -e, *useful.*

umbra, -ae, f. *shade.*

196. 1. Quis urbem pulchriorem quam Rōmam vidit? 2. Quis urbem pulchriorem Rōmā vidit? 3. Aestāte umbra grātor est quam hieme. 4. Miles gladium longiorem habuit. 5. Hōc iter ad castra Caesaris est brevissimum. 6. Montēs altissimī aestāte nive sunt albī. 7. Padus fuit Ītaliae flūmen pulcherrimum. 8. Quod flūmen pulchrius Padō Poenī viderant? 9. Arma quibus Rōmānī pūgnābant gravia erant. 10. Helvētīi angustōs finēs habuērunt. 11. Quod iter est brevius quam illud? 12. Quod iter est brevius illō?

197. 1. What commander have you seen braver than Caesar? 2. Did not his name terrify the Gauls? 3. The bravest men are not always the wisest. 4. Seas are deeper than rivers. 5. What is more useful to men than money? 6. My companion was very prudent. 7. The companion whom we had was very wise. 8. My sword is rather long.



SCUTA.

LESSON XXXII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

The following tables are given for reference.

198. Six adjectives in *-lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *-limus* to form the superlative:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>-e, easy.</i>	facilior, <i>-ius</i>	facillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
difficilis, <i>-e, hard.</i>	difficilior, <i>-ius</i>	difficillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
similis, <i>-e, like.</i>	similior, <i>-ius</i>	simillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
dissimilis, <i>-e, unlike.</i>	dissimilior, <i>-ius</i>	dissimillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
humilis, <i>-e, low.</i>	humilior, <i>-ius</i>	humillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>
gracilis, <i>-e, slender.</i>	gracilior, <i>-ius</i>	gracillimus, <i>-a, -um</i>

199. The following also form their superlative irregularly. The positives are not used in the nominative singular masculine.

exterus, <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer,</i> <i>exterior.</i>	extrēmus extimus	} <i>outermost,</i> <i>last.</i>
inferus, <i>below.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īfimus īmus	
posterus, <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus postumus	} <i>last.</i>
superus, <i>above.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus summus	

200. The following want the positive. They form the comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs.

[cis, citrā, <i>on this side.</i>]	citerior, <i>hither.</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost.</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within.</i>]	interior, <i>inner.</i>	intimus, <i>inmost.</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before.</i>]	prior, <i>former.</i>	primus, <i>first.</i>
[prope, <i>near.</i>]	propior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>next.</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>]	ūterior, <i>further.</i>	ūltimus, <i>furthest, last.</i>

201. Some adjectives are compared, as in English, by means of adverbs:

idōneus, fit; magis idōneus, more fit; m̄ximē idōneus, most fit.

202. *Model Sentences.*

1. *Hōrum Gallōrum fortissimī erant Belgae, of these Gauls the bravest were the Belgians.*

2. *Multi militum necātī sunt, many of the soldiers were killed.*

3. *Plūs pecūniae habent quam virtūtis, they have more (of) money than (of) worth.*

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a *whole* of which a *part* is taken. This genitive is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

203. Rule.—*The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.*

a. Sometimes *ē (ex)* with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive: *multi ex militibus, many of the soldiers.*

204. *Vocabulary.*

Brūtus, -ī, m. Brutus.

citerior, -ius, hither.

collis, -is, m. (colli-), hill.

cōnsilium, -ī, n. wisdom (59).

difficilis, -e, difficult, hard.

dissimilis, -e, unlike, with dat.

facilis, -e, easy.

Gallus, -ī, m. a Gaul.

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.

īferus, -a, -um, lower.

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size.

Ocelum, -ī, n. Ocelum, a town.

pars, partis, f. (parti-), part, share.

pēnsūm, -ī, n. task, lesson.

propior, -ius, nearer, with dat.

superus, -a, -um, high.

ūterior, -ius, further.

205. 1. *Multum itineris est angustum sed facillimum.*
2. *Hominēs Āfricae hominibus¹ Eurōpae sunt dissi-*

¹ Dative.

millimī. 3. Pēnsūm quod est facile omnibus placet. 4. Illud oppidum, Ocelum nōmine, est citeriōris Galliae ūltimum. 5. Galli quōs primā hōrā vidimus in superiōre parte collis erant. 6. Sed secundā hōrā inferiōrem partem complēverant. 7. Oceli vigintī ex equitibus vulnerātī sunt. 8. Brūtus, vir summī cōnsili, ūltimus Rōmānōrum appellātus est. 9. Primā lūce pars hostium in monte videbātur ā militibus. 10. Urbs Rōma mari¹ nōn erat proxima. 11. Omnium collium quōs vidēmus ille est māgnitūdine castris māximē idōneus.

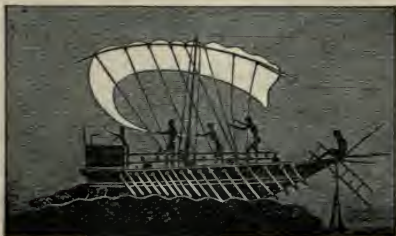
206. 1. What easier task do you see than this? 2. We have seen more difficult things.² 3. These new books are very unlike in size.³ 4. Which⁴ of those hills is the nearest? 5. What towns are very near that river yonder, the Po? 6. In a very short time the bravest of the enemy were frightened. 7. All the soldiers that we saw on the next hill were Gauls. 8. Whose horses are handsomer than Marcus's?

¹ Dative.

² See 168.

³ Omit and use the neuter plural of the adjective.

⁴ Masculine gender. Why?



NAVIS PIRATA.

LESSON XXXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

207. The following adjectives form the comparative and superlative irregularly:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> .	—, plūs (208)	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> .		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> .	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis, <i>old</i> .	senior ¹	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	iūnior ¹	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

208. Declension of plūs, *more*, plur. *more* or *many*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. —	—	plūribus	plūribus
Ac. —	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
Ab. —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

209. *Model Sentences.*

1. Caesar sex annis minor nātū erat Pompēiō, *Caesar was six years younger (younger by six years) than Pompey.*

2. Arcēs decem pedibus sunt altiōrēs quam mūrus, *the towers are ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

¹ Instead of senior, māior nātū and instead of iūnior, minor nātū; (*greater by birth*) is often used, but nātū is sometimes omitted.

a. Observe that the ablatives **annīs** and **pedibus** answer the question (*by*) *how much?* and denote the DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE between the objects compared.

210. Rule. — *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

211.*Vocabulary.*

Catilīna , -ae, m. <i>Catiline</i> .	prūdentia , -ae, f. <i>wisdom,</i>
Cicerō , -ōnis, m. <i>Cicero</i> ; p. 141.	<i>prudence, foresight.</i>
interdum , adv. <i>sometimes.</i>	semper , adv. <i>always.</i>
nātū , abl., m. <i>by birth, in age.</i>	senex , senis , <i>old</i> (499).
ōrātor , -ōris, m. <i>orator.</i>	sex (indecl.), <i>six.</i>
pigrītia , -ae, f. <i>laziness.</i>	timeō , -ēre, timuī , —, <i>fear.</i>

Senex, used mostly of persons, and implying respect.

Vetus, much more used as an adjective, and applied to persons and things.

212. 1. Pompēius sex annīs māior nātū erat quam Caesar. 2. Nōne ōrātor quoque clārissimus sex annīs māior¹ erat Caesare? 3. Quid erat eī nōmen? 4. Cicerō, quī ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum māximus appellātur. 5. Optimī ōrātōrēs interdum sunt pessimī cīvēs. 6. Sed Cicerō cīvis optimus erat et ācerrimus cōsul. 7. Sapientissimīs cōsiliīs Rōmam servāvit, quam Catilina dēlēre tentāvit. 8. Optimōs² amāmus, timēmus pessimōs. 9. Catilina ab omnibus bonīs cīvibus timēbātur. 10. Multō melius³ est amārī quam timērī, et nōn difficilīus.

¹ See p. 80, note 1.

³ Neuter, because the infinitive is regarded as a neuter noun.

² *The best (men).* See p. 44, note 2.

213. 1. A man with a large head¹ is not always superior in wisdom. 2. It is much easier to love friends than enemies. 3. What is worse than laziness? 4. Very many of the soldiers had more courage² than prudence.³ 5. The oldest wines are not always the best. 6. My brother, who is older than Sextus, is a head⁴ taller than Marcus. 7. Was not Caesar a better general than Pompey? 8. Caesar had a great many⁵ friends.



LESSON XXXIV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

FORMATION.

214.

Models.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
grātus, <i>agreeable.</i>	grāto-	grātē, <i>agreeably.</i>
miser, <i>wretched.</i>	misero-	miserē, <i>wretchedly.</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful.</i>	pulchro-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully.</i>

a. Observe that adverbs from adjectives with o-stems are formed by changing the o to ē.

fortis, <i>brave.</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely.</i>
ācer, <i>eager.</i>	ācri-	ācritēr, <i>eagerly.</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise.</i>	prūdenti-	prūdenter, <i>wisely.</i>

b. Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives with i-stems by adding ter to the stem.

c. Observe that stems in -nti- drop ti before ter.

¹ See 140.

³ See 193, a.

⁵ Express a great many by

² See 202, 3.

⁴ See 209.

one word.

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much</i> .	multum, <i>much</i> .
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .
impūnis, <i>unpunished</i> .	impūne, <i>with safety</i> .

d. The accusative singular neuter of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

citus, <i>quick</i> .	citō, <i>quickly</i> .
subitus, <i>sudden</i> .	subitō, <i>suddenly</i> .
prīmus, <i>first</i> .	prīmō, <i>at first</i> .

e. The ablative singular neuter of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

COMPARISON.

215.

Models:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
grātē, <i>agreeably</i> .	grātius	grātissimē = <i>very</i>
miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> .	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr, <i>eagerly</i> .	ācrius	ācerrimē
fēliciter, <i>luckily</i> .	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
bene, ¹ <i>well</i> .	melius	optimē
male, <i>badly, ill</i> .	pēius	pessimē
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs	plūrimum
—	magis	māximē

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective ; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final o of the stem to ē.

b. If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is also irregular.

c. Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them : brevis (brevi-), *short*, liber (libero-), *free*, aeger (aegro-), *weak*, similis (simili-), *like*.

¹ Formed irregularly from bonus.

216.

Vocabulary.

ācriter, adv. <i>eagerly, fiercely.</i>	diūtius, adv., comp. of diū,
amplius, adv. <i>more, longer.</i>	[superl., diūtissimē], <i>longer.</i>
cārē, adv. <i>dearly.</i> (281)	facile, adv. <i>easily.</i>
cōpia, -ae, f. <i>plenty, abundance.</i>	fidēliter, adv. <i>faithfully.</i>
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus,	ibi, adv. <i>there, in that place.</i>
<i>owe, ought, must.</i>	lēx, lēgis, f. <i>law.</i> [(152, a).]
diligenter, adv. <i>diligently.</i>	parēs, -entis, m. and f. <i>parent</i>
pāreō, -ēre, pārui, —, (w. dat.) <i>obey.</i>	
subitō, adv. <i>suddenly.</i>	

217. 1. Militēs Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs facile supē-
rābant. 2. Longīs hastis multō fortius pūgnābant.
3. Amplius sex hōrīs fortissimē pūgnāvērunt. 4. Cōsul
Rōmae diūtius manēbat quam Capuae. 5. Caesar castra
mōvit et subitō oppidum oppūgnāvit. 6. Hieme montēs
altissimī cōpiā nivīs complentur. 7. Tum miserī rūstici
in aedificiis, animālīa in agrīs vivunt (*live*). 8. Puerī¹
parentēs cārissimē amāre dēbent. 9. Parentēs pueris
cōnsilium optimum dant. 10. Prō eis diligentissimē labō-
rant. 11. Puerī, parentibus² pārēte, quibus omnia dēbētis.
12. Lēgibus² patriae fidēlissimē pārēre dēbēmus.

218. 1. The Gauls were more easily frightened than
the Romans. 2. Did not Caesar stay a very long time
in Gaul? 3. There he fought battles most successfully.
4. Suddenly he moved his camp into lower Italy. 5. The
elders³ who were in the city remained, and luckily were
saved. 6. That boy laughs much; he is merry. 7. Laugh-
ing⁴ is much better than mourning.⁵ 8. Children some-
times do not obey their parents faithfully.

¹ Children.³ Older (men).⁴ To laugh.² Notice the dative with pārēō.⁵ To mourn. Cf. 212, 10.

219.

*Colloquium.**voc. c.*

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

P. Quid, mī filiōle, in scholā hodiē discēbās ?
little son learn

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsum de adverbīis longissimum.

P. Cui partī ōrātiōnis est adverbium simillimum ?
speech

F. Simillimum, ut opinor, est adverbium adiectivō.
as I think

P. Rēctē, puer ; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris : Sī, ut
explain if you can as
 dicis, adverbium adiectivō est simile, unde nōmen trāxit ?
say whence has derived

F. Fōrtasse propter hōc, quia saepissimē verbis
perhaps on account of very often verbs
 adiungitur.
it is joined

P. Optimē, filiōle ; ēn tibi āssem !
behold for you penny



LESSON XXXV.

Third Conjugation. — Ē-Verbs.

Regō, (STEM rege) rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

220. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of regō (513).

a. Compare the forms of regō with those of amō and moneō. See wherein they are alike, and wherein they differ.

221. 1. Regit, regēbat, reget. 2. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 3. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 4. Reguntur,

regēbantur, regentur. 5. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 6. Rege-
ris, regēbāris, regēris. 7. Regimus, regimur. 8. Regē-
bāmus, regēbāmur. 9. Regēmus, regēmur. 10. Regere,
regi. 11. Regite, regimini. 12. Rege, regere.

a. Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*,
lead, *mittō*, *send*, and *scribō*, *write*.

222. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. He was leading, he
was led. 3. He will lead, he will be led. 4. They lead,
they are led. 5. To lead, to send, to write. 6. To be
led, to be sent, to be written. 7. We shall send, we
shall be sent. 8. You were leading, you were led.
9. Does he lead? Is he sent? Does he write?
10. Write, lead,¹ send. 11. Be thou led, be ye led.
12. I lead, I am led.

223.*Vocabulary.*

dēfendō, -ere, *dēfendī*, *dē-*

fēnsus, *defend*, *protect*.

dūcō, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductus*,

lead, *conduct*.

dum, conj. *while*, *as long as*.

epistula, -ae, f. *letter*.

gerō, -ere, *gessi*, *gestus*, *bear*,

carry on, *wage (war)*.

luvenis, -e, *young (207)*.

Labiēnus, -ī, m. *Labiēnus*.

legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion*. (1592)

mittō, -ere, *misī*, *missus*, *send*.

scribō, -ere, *scripsi*, *scriptus*,

write, *write out*.

sī, conj. *if*, *whether*.

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife*.

vincō, -ere, *vici*, *victus*, *con-*

quer, *defeat*.

224. 1. *Dēfendite*, O *civēs*, *hanc pulcherrimam urbem*.
2. *Diligentissimē eam dēfenderē dēbētis*. 3. *Si ācriter*
pūgnābitis, *uxōrēs liberōsque dēfendētis*. 4. *Si Caesar*
est in urbe, *facillimē dēfendētur*. 5. *Is semper hostis*

¹ The present imperative second singular is *dūc* for *dūce*.

vincit. 6. Caesar sex legiōnēs in ūlteriōrem Galliam mittit. 7. Bellum cum Gallīs ibi gerēbātur. 8. Eae legiōnēs quās Caesar mittit ā Labiēnō dūcuntur. 9. Eā aestāte, dum Caesar bellum gerit¹ in ūlteriōre Galliā, Pompēius Rōmae fuit. 10. Fuitne Pompēius imperātor melior quam Caesar?

225. 1. The town will be defended by the most skillful generals. 2. At this time many lands are ruled by kings. 3. Boys and girls, write letters to all your² friends. 4. You ought to write them with great care. 5. Who of our generals will lead the legions into battle? 6. If Caesar leads³ them, they will fight with the greatest courage. 7. Send all the elders into the citadel. 8. The younger men, whose valor is great, will defend the city.

LESSON XXXVI.

226. Reading Lesson.

CORNELIA'S JEWELS. — *Her own*

Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus erant filiī Cornēliae, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī filiae. Iī pueri bonīs artibus flōruērunt. Ā mātře ēducāti sunt et ab⁴ eā sermōnis ēlegantiam discēbant. Cornēlia erat mulier sapientissima. Cum Campāna mātṛōna ōrnāmenta sua⁵ pretiōsissima ei⁶ ostendēbat, Cornēlia duōs⁷ filiōs vocāvit. “Haec,” inquit, “sunt mea ōrnāmenta.”

¹ Was carrying on; the present indicative with *dum* is often used of a past act.

² Omit.

³ Shall lead.

⁴ From.

⁵ Her (own).

⁶ Feminine.

⁷ Two.

227. 1. Cornelia had two sons. 2. The elder was called Tiberius,¹ the younger Caius.² 3. They were boys of very good qualities.³ 4. For their mother faithfully educated them. 5. Elegance of speech is a great ornament to boys. 6. If boys are well trained, they learn to obey their elders.⁴ 7. Ladies always like⁵ to display jewels, if they have them. 8. What precious jewels did Cornelia display?

228.*Vocabulary.*

ars, artis, f. (arti-) *art, skill*;
in plu., *qualities*.

cum, conj. *when, while*.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *train, educate*.

flōreō, -ēre, flōruī, —, *flourish, be conspicuous, be distinguished*.

libenter, adv. *gladly*.

māter, -tris, f. *mother*.

mātrōna, -ae, f. *matron, lady*.

mulier, mulieris, f. *woman*.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. *ornament, jewel*.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, *show, display*.

pretiōsus, -a, -um, *precious*.

sermō, -ōnis, m. *speech, conversation*.

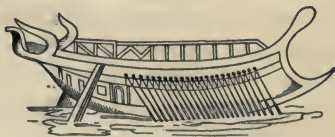
¹ See 37.

² Note that the Latin Gāius is Caius in English.

³ See 140.

⁴ Their elders = older (men); dative.

⁵ Like to display = gladly display.



NAVIS LONGA.

LESSON XXXVII.

Fourth Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN *u*.

229. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension in *-us* are masculine, those in *-ū* are neuter, except so far as 13, 2 is applicable.

a. Domus, house, idūs, the Ides, manus, hand, and a few others, are feminine.

230.*Paradigms.*

gradus, m. <i>step.</i>		cornū, n. <i>horn.</i>	
STEM, gradu-		STEM, cornū-	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G. gradūs	graduum	cornūs	cornuum
D. graduī, -ū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac. gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
Ab. gradu	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

231. Artus, joint, portus, harbor, and a few other nouns, together with dissyllables in *-cus*, have the dative and ablative plural in *-ubus*: portubus, arcubus, with bows.

232. Domus, house, has also forms of the second declension. See 499. Domī is used only as a locative.

233. Decline together māgnus exercitus, large army; mea manus, my hand; longum cornū, long horn.

234.

Vocabulary.

cornū, -ūs, n. <i>horn; wing (of an army)</i> ; p. 130.	manus, -ūs, f. <i>hand; band, force.</i>
dexter, -era, -erum (oftener -tra, -trum), <i>right.</i>	peditātus, -ūs, m. <i>infantry.</i>
domus, -ī, f. <i>house, home</i> (499).	portus, -ūs, m. <i>harbor.</i>
elephantus, -ī, m. <i>elephant.</i>	prope, prep. with acc., <i>near.</i>
equitātus, -ūs, m. <i>cavalry.</i>	sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>left.</i>
exercitus, -ūs, m. <i>army.</i>	teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, <i>hold, keep.</i>

235. 1. Meā¹ manū hās epistolās māximā cum cūrā scribam. 2. Multī Rōmānōrum artem belli puerī didicērunt. 3. Corinthī erant duo² portūs. 4. In quibus portubus erant plūrimae nāvēs. 5. Dextrum exercitūs cornū fortissimē pūgnāvit. 6. Caesar exercitum in proximum oppidum dūcit. 7. Subitō peditātus hostium in³ ēius legiōnēs mīttitur. 8. Exercitūs Gallōrum, equitātū flōrēbant. 9. Bellum ab eis equitātū⁴ peditātūque gerēbātur. 10. Scipionis equitātus territū est elephantis Hannibalis.

236. 1. The general with all the cavalry held the right wing of the army. 2. At home and in the field we ought to learn prudence. 3. Many animals fight with their⁵ horns. 4. Bands of the enemy were seen near the house of Marcus. 5. And in the further part of the harbor they saw a rather⁶ large ship. 6. Marcus holds his⁵ sword in his right hand. 7. And with it⁷ he will defend his wife and children. 8. In his left hand he carries a shield.

¹ My own.³ Against.⁵ Omit.⁶ See 194, c.² Two.⁴ See 84.⁷ And with it = with which.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

237. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *regō* (513).

a. Compare these forms with the same tenses of *amō* and *moneō*.

238. 1. *Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit.* 2. *Rēctus est, rēctus erat, rēctus erit.* 3. *Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint.* 4. *Rēxī, rēcta sum.* 5. *Rēxistis, rēctae estis.* 6. *Rēxerimus, rēctae erimus.* 7. *Rēximus, rēctī sumus.* 8. *Rēxisse, rēctus esse.* 9. *Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō.* 10. *Rēctus sum, rēctus eram, rēctus erō.*

239. 1. He has led, he has been led. 2. He had led, he had been led. 3. You will have led, you will have been led. 4. They have sent, they have been sent. 5. He led, he was led. 6. We had sent, we had been sent. 7. You wrote, you led, you sent. 8. To have led, to have sent. 9. To have been led, to have been sent.

240.*Model Sentences.*

1. *Caesar Labiēnum in Galliam cum exercitū mīsit, Caesar sent Labienus into Gaul with an army.*

2. *Domī cum liberis mānsimus, we stayed at home with our children.*

241. Rule. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

a. If the ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* is sometimes omitted : *māgnō exercitū, with a large army.* See ablative of manner (92, 93).

242.*Vocabulary.*

caedēs, -is, f. (caedi-), <i>slaughter, carnage.</i>	locus, -ī, m. (pl. locī and loca) <i>place, position.</i>
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, <i>depart, withdraw.</i>	pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, <i>place, put; pitch (camp).</i>
inter, prep. w. acc., <i>between, among, amid.</i>	putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>think, reckon, believe.</i>
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>read.</i>	Rhēnus, -ī, m. <i>the Rhine.</i>
senātus, -ūs, m. <i>senate.</i>	
trāns, prep. w. acc., <i>across, the other side of, beyond.</i>	

243. 1. Epistolās lēgī quās scripsisti. 2. Oppidum positum est¹ inter flūmen Rhēnum et montem. 3. Cōsul urbem Rōmam dēfendit. 4. Ūnus² ducum māgnū exercitū in Galliam dūxerat. 5. Scipiō in Hispāniam cum sex legiōnibus missus erat. 6. Bellum in Ītaliā ab Hannibale gestum est. 7. Saepissimē exercitūs Rōmānōs vicit Hannibal. 8. Dux castra prope portum posuit. 9. Hostēs pīla ē locō superiōre misērunt. 10. Dum haec in dextrō cornū geruntur,³ sinistrum⁴ fugātum est. 11. Quō⁵ plūrēs erant hostēs, eō⁵ māior caedēs fuit. 12. Virtūtem militi putāmus optimum esse ōrnāmentum.

¹ positum est = *is situated.*

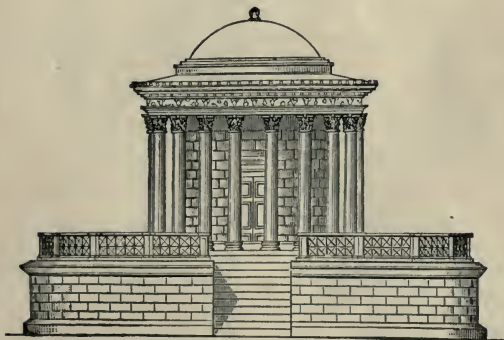
² *One.*

³ See p. 87, n. 1.

⁴ Supply cornū.

⁵ Quō . . . eō, *by which . . . by that = the . . . the.* See 210.

244. 1. Caesar wrote many letters to¹ the senate.
 2. And these² letters were read by the chief of the senate.
 3. Labienus hastened with all the infantry towards the river.
 4. He pitched his camp on the other side of the river.
 5. Large bands of the enemy were seen in many places.
 6. They had withdrawn from³ the place in which the camp had been pitched.
 7. At daybreak several⁴ soldiers departed from the camp.
 8. If the army is destroyed,⁵ the citizens will mourn.

¹ ad.² *And these = which.*³ ex.⁴ aliquot.⁵ Future.

TEMPLUM.

LESSON XXXIX.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

245.

Paradigms.

FIRST PERSON.

Ego, I.

SINGULAR.

- N. **ego, I.**
 G. **meī, of me.**
 D. **mihi, (mī), to or for me.**
 AC. **mē, me.**
 AB. **(ā) mē, by me.**

PLURAL.

- nōs, we.**
nostrūm, or nostrī, of us.
nōbīs, to or for us.
nōs, us.
(ā) nōbīs, by us.

SECOND PERSON.

Tū, thou.

- N. **tū, thou (you).** **vōs, you, ye.**
 G. **tuī, of thee (you).** **vestrūm, or vestrī, of you.**
 D. **tibi, to or for thee (you).** **vōbīs, to or for you.**
 AC. **tē, thee (you).** **vōs, you.**
 AB. **(ā) tē, by thee (you).** **(ā) vōbīs, by you.**

THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE).

Suī, of himself, etc.

- N. _____
 G. **suī, of himself, herself, itself,** **suī, of themselves.**
 D. **sibi, to or for himself, etc.** **sibi, to or for themselves.**
 AC. **sē (sēsē), himself, etc.** **sē (sēsē), themselves.**
 AB. **(ā) sē (sēsē), by himself, etc.** **(ā) sē (sēsē), by themselves.**

a. The personal pronoun of the third person, when not reflexive, is supplied by the demonstrative *is, ea, id*, and sometimes by *hic* and *ille*. See 100, *f*, and 119, *c*.

246.

Model Sentences.

1. **Ego sum trīstis, tū es laetus, I am sad, you are glad.**
2. **Omnēs hominēs sē (or sēsē) amant, all men love themselves.**
3. **Quis vestrūm sē nōn amat? who of you does not love himself?**
4. **Filius mēcum domī Rōmae manet, my son stays at home with me at Rome.**

a. Observe in 1 that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. In general, nominatives of personal pronouns are not expressed; when they are used, it is for emphasis or contrast.

b. The reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands, as in 2.

c. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used with reflexive sense: **tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; omnēs nōs amāmus, we all love ourselves.**

d. The forms **nostrūm** and **vestrūm** are chiefly used in the partitive sense. See 202.

e. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal pronouns is appended to them: **mēcum, with me; tēcum, with thee, etc.** So also with relatives and interrogatives: **quibuscum, with whom.**

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

247. The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of personal pronouns. They are sometimes used as pronouns.

meus, -a, -um, my, mine (voc. sing. masc., mī).	suus, -a, -um (reflexive), <i>his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.</i>
tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine; your, yours.	noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.
	vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.

a. When **your, yours** refers to one person, use **tuus**; when to more than one, use **vester**.

cum is an indeclinable with personal relative & interrogative pronouns

248. *Model Sentences.*

1. Ego quī haec scribō sum tuus amicus, *I who write this am your friend.*

2. Tū quī haec scribis es meus amicus, *you who write this are my friend.*

a. Observe that the relative does not change to conform to the *person* of the antecedent, and that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

3. Hic est ēius liber, *this is his book.*

4. Librum suum amicō dat, *he gives his (own) book to a friend.*

b. Notice the difference between ēius, *his*, and suum, *his*, the latter referring back to the subject (reflexive like sē). In EXERCISE 129 "his" occurs in 2, 5, 6, and 7. If translated into Latin, in which two would it be expressed by ēius, and in which by suus?

249. *Vocabulary.*

bene, adv. *well.*

cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,

preserve, save.

culpa, -ae, f. *blame, fault.*

laus, laudis, f. *praise, glory.*

trīstis, -e, *sad, gloomy.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus,¹ *be*

strong, be in good health.

250. 1. Ego vōs videō, vōs mē vidētis. 2. Putātisne mē tristem esse²? 3. Ego nōn sum trīstis, sed vōs mihi trīstissimae esse vidēmini.³ 4. Ego et tū⁴ Cornēliae ōrnāmenta nostra ostendēmus. 5. Illane nōbis

¹ In the principal parts of verbs invariably intransitive, the future active participle is given instead of the perfect passive.

² *Me to be sad = that I am sad.*

³ The passive of videō often means *seem*.

⁴ Ego et tū = *you and I.*

ostendet ōrnāmenta sua? 6. Sī tū et frāter tuus valētis, bene est. 7. Estne Mārcus māior nātū frātre suō? 8. Nōs quī tē laudāmus illōs culpāmus. 9. Tibi laus, illis erit culpa. 10. Cōservāte vōs,¹ uxōrēs, liberōs, fōrtūnāsque vestrās. 11. Caesar omnēs equitēs sēcum habuit. 12. Librī quōs nōs legimus sunt optimi.

251. 1. If your father is in good health, it is well. 2. You and I² are in good health. 3. I have put my fortunes into your hands. 4. Preserve them diligently for me and my children. 5. You who find fault with us praise them. 6.³ My life is dear to me, yours to you. 7. While you were laughing, we were mourning. 8. Cornelia saw *her* jewels, but praised her own. 9. What helmets (*galeae*) are handsomer than the Romans'?

¹ See 246, c.

³ In this order: *to me my*

² *You and I* = *we*, hence the verb is first person plural. Cf. 250, 9.

250, 4.



GALEAE.

LESSON XL.

Subjunctive of Purpose with ut and nē.

252. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of *sum* (516), and of the active and passive of *amō* (511) and *moneō* (512).

a. In the same way inflect the present and imperfect subjunctive of *culpō*, *blame*, *iuvō*, *help*, *moveō*, *move*, *dēleō*, *destroy*, and *iubeō*, *bid*, *order*.

253. *Model Sentences.*

1. *Sē armant ut pūgnent*, they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting.

2. *Sē armābant ut pūgnarent*, they armed themselves that they might fight, to fight, etc.

3. *Cīvēs pūgnant nē oppidum dēleātur*, the citizens fight that the town may not be destroyed, lest the town be destroyed.

4. *Servī labōrābant nē culpārentur*, the slaves were toiling, lest they should be blamed, so that they might not be blamed.

a. Observe that the subordinate clauses express the *purpose* or *motive* of the subjects of the principal clauses, *ut* introducing a positive and *nē* a negative purpose.

b. Observe that the verbs in the purpose clauses are in the subjunctive, and that the tense depends upon the tense of the principal clause, the present (*pūgnent*, *dēleātur*) following the present (also the future), and the imperfect (*pūgnarent*, *culpārentur*) following a past tense.

c. Notice the various ways of translating *ut*.

d. Purpose clauses are often called *final clauses*.

254. Rule.—*The subjunctive is used with 'ut and nē to express purpose.*

a. The infinitive is not to be used in Latin, as it is in English, to express purpose, but the Latin purpose clause may often be translated by the English infinitive.

255. 1. Eum misit ut, —

oppugnāret, dēlēret, occupāret, tenēret, cōservāret.

2. Nōs mittit ut, —

pūgnēmus, dēleāmus, necēmus, terreāmus, culpēmus.

3. Mittuntur ut, —

oppūgnent, dēleant, occupent, teneant, obsidēs sint.

4. Missi sunt nē oppidum, —

oppūgnārētur, dēlērētur, occupārētur, tenērētur.

5. Tē mittam ut, —

ōrnēs, praebeās, aedificēs, moneās, rideās, laudēs.

6. Vōs moneō ut, —

amētis, moveātis, laudētis, placeātis, fortēs sitis.

7. Eum monuit nē, —

ōrnāret, movēret, culpāret, piger esset.

8. Monētur nē, —

superētur, moveātur, occupētur, teneātur, sit piger.

256. 1. I was sent, —

to besiege, to destroy, to seize, to hold, to overcome.

2. They will send him, —

to fight, to destroy, to kill, to frighten, to furnish.

3. You were sent for the purpose of, —

toiling, pleasing, ploughing, furnishing, filling.

4. They were sent that the city might not be, —

besieged, destroyed, seized, held, taken by storm.

5. He advises us, —

to love, to move, to praise, to laugh, to be prudent.

6. We advised him not to be, —

surpassed, moved, seized, frightened, a soldier.

LESSON XLI.

Fifth Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN *ē*.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

257. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

258.*Paradigms.*

		<i>diēs</i> , <i>day</i> . <i>m</i> .			<i>rēs</i> , <i>thing</i> .
STEM, <i>diē-</i>					<i>rē-</i>
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>		<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
G.	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>		<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
D.	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>		<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
AC.	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>		<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
AB.	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>		<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

259.*Model Sentences.*

1. *Decem annōs Trōia oppugnābātur*, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. *Arx alta est centum pedēs*, *the citadel is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *annōs* denotes duration or extent of *time*, *pedēs*, extent of *space*. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

260. Rule. — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

261.*Vocabulary.*

aciēs, -ēī, f. line of battle.

circum, prep. w. acc., around.

dē, prep. w. abl., from, about,
concerning.

diēs, -ēī, m. day.

instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strū-
ctus, draw up, form, ar-
range, instruct.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, bid,
order, command.

mille (indecl. in sing.); plu.

mīlia, mīlium, thousand.

mille passuum, a thousand
(of) paces, mile.

nē, conj. lest, that not.

passus, -ūs, m. pace, step.

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. plain.

posterus, -a, -um, following,
next, coming after.

relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relic-
tus, leave, abandon.

rēs, rei, f. thing, circumstance,
affair.

ut, conj. that, in order that.

262. 1. Caesar castra in māgnā plānitiē posuit.
2. Haec plānitiēs erat duo¹ milia passuum lāta. 3. Ibi
aciem instrūxit. 4. Sex hōrās equitātus peditātusque
in aciē mānsērunt. 5. Sed hostēs nocte discessērant.
6. Posterō diē discessit Caēsar ex illō locō. 7. Labiē-
num cum parvā manū reliquit ut castra servāret.
8. Multōs diēs exercitus sine frūmentō erat. 9. Et
rēs erant in angustō.² 10. Labiēnus igitur nūntium dē
hāc rē ad Caesarem mīsit.

263. 1. The enemy's cavalry saw a broad plain near
the hill. 2. What did they see in this plain? 3. They
saw the line of battle of the Romans. 4. And they were
greatly alarmed at this circumstance. 5. But on the
next day the plain was abandoned. 6. The Romans had

¹ Two.

² Adjective used as noun; a strait.

withdrawn from the plain in order to save a town which was near by.¹ 7. Around the town was a wall twenty feet high. 8. For many hours the enemy assaulted this wall.

264.

Colloquium.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima?

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs?

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātivō singu-

lārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim
nōminum in *is* dēsinentium.

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetivum in *ium* habeant?

D. Prīmum nōmina in *is* et *ēs* dēsinentia, sī in gene-
tivō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs*.

Deinde monosyllaba in *s* vel *x* dēsinentia, sī ante *s* et
x stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx*.

Tum nōmina in *ns* et *rs* dēsinentia; ut *cliēs* et *cohors*.

Dēnique neutra in *e*, *al*, *ar* dēsinentia; ut *mare*, *animal*,
calcar.

¹ See 179.

PILA.

LESSON XLII.

Third Conjugation.—Verbs in -iō.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE WHITHER.

Capiō, (STEM *cape*), *take*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

265. Verbs in -iō of the third conjugation vary in inflection in certain tenses from the model verb *regō*.

a. Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *capiō* (514).

b. Compare the present, imperfect, and future indicative of *capiō* with the same tenses of *regō*, and note the differences.

266. 1. Capit, capiēbat, capiet. 2. Capiunt, capiēbant, capient. 3. Capior, capiēbar, capiār. 4. Capimus, capimur. 5. Capis, caperis. 6. Capiēbātis, capiēbāmini. 7. Cēpī, captus sum. 8. Cape, capere. 9. Cēperāmus, captae erāmus. 10. Caperis, cēperis.

a. In like manner practice upon *faciō*, *make*, and *iaciō*, *throw*.

267. 1. He was making, he was throwing. 2. It was made, it was thrown. 3. They make, they were making, they will make. 4. I take, I am taken. 5. We took, we were taken. 6. Take (thou), make,¹ throw. 7. They will be taken, they will be thrown. 8. I shall take, I shall be taken. 9. To take, to be taken. 10. He makes, he takes, he throws.

¹ Fac for face. Cf. p. 86, n. 1.

268.

Model Sentences.

1. Caesar ad urbem properāvit, *Caesar hastened to the city.*

2. Caesar Rōmam properāvit, *Caesar hastened to Rome.*

3. Exercitum in Graeciam mīsit, *he sent an army into Greece.*

4. Exercitum Athēnās mīsit, *he sent an army to Athens.*

a. Observe in 1 and 3 that the place whither is expressed by the accusative with a preposition, while in 2 and 4 there is no preposition.

269. Rule. — *Names of towns used to express place whither are put in the accusative without a preposition.* *Idea of end of motion*

a. The accusatives of domus, home, and rūs, country, are used like names of towns.

270.

Vocabulary.

Hereafter derivations will be indicated in the vocabularies. English derivatives will be indicated in *this type*. See 342.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, capture.* lēgātus, -ī, m. *ambassador, lieutenant; deputy.*

cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus, *desire, wish.* nēmō, -inī (dat.), m. [nē-homō] (no gen. or abl.) *no one.*

decem (indecl.), *ten.*

pāx, pācis, f. *peace.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*

proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *flee, run away.*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *take back, receive, recover.*

itaque, conj. *and so, therefore.*

sē (mē, -tē, etc.) recipere, *withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

271. 1. Ā Gallis Rōmam missi sunt lēgāti. 2. Lēgāti quōs Galli miserant ā senātū in templō recepti sunt. 3. Pācem cum Rōmānis facere cupiēbant, qui eōs proeliō vicerant. 4. Captivōs quoque, quōs Rōmāni cēperant, recipere cupivērunt. 5. Decem diēs Rōmae manēbant. 6. Sed Rōmāni cum eis pācem nōn fēcērunt. 7. Nam eōs et omnia bona¹ dēlēre cupivērunt. 8. Itaque lēgāti in Galliam, suam patriam, sē recēpērunt. 9. Quibuscum bellum gessērunt Galli? Cum Rōmānis.

272. 1. I wish to hurl a javelin. 2. That is easy ; take the javelin in ² your right hand. 3. Yours ³ is too ⁴ long ; take mine, which is a foot shorter. 4. Why are you running away ? 5. Because the thing is too difficult for me. 6. Shall you flee home ? 7. I shall betake myself to yonder ⁵ forest, where nobody will see me. 8. Shall you leave me without a comrade ? 9. The fault is yours ; you have been laughing. ⁶

¹ *Goods, possessions*; adjective
as noun. ² *Into*.

² *Into.*

³ Agrees with *pīlum* understood.

⁴ See 194, c. ⁵ See 100, c.

⁶ Have been laughing = have laughed.



SIGNAL

LESSON XLIII.

273. Reading Lesson.

A BATTLE.

Eō diē Caesar ex castris exercitum ēdūxit, et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae rēs tamen hostibus nōta est, quōrum peditātus ā nostris¹ in summō² colle vidēbātur. Tum Caesar in dextrō et sinistrō cornū equitēs conlocāvit ut peditātum iuvārent, et militum suōrum animōs ad pūgnam ita incitāvit: “Militēs, omnis rei pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fōrtūna iuvat; fortibus erit victōria.” Illi ācritē in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt, sed neque eōrum pīla neque māgnī clāmōrēs nostrōs¹ terruērunt. Brevī tempore ex⁸ omnibus partibus hostis vicērunt, quī trāns flūmen fūgērunt. Dux eōrum captus⁴ et Rōmam missus est.

274. 1. On the next day bands of horsemen were seen near the hill. 2. Our line of battle was drawn up by Caesar. 3. Meanwhile their⁵ leader had aroused their minds so that they might not fear the attack of the Romans. 4. “Soldiers,” said he, “you see those Romans yonder on the plain. 5. They are brave men, but are not we much braver? 6. You will fight for your country, which they are trying to destroy; for your children, whom they wish to capture. 7. Make your attack upon their left wing; put that to flight, and victory will be yours.⁶ 8. Then depart to your homes,⁷ where you shall receive the rewards of victory.”

¹ *Our (men).*⁴ *Est* is often omitted with compound tenses.² *The top of.*⁵ *Eōrum* or *suus*?³ *In.*⁶ *To you.*⁷ See 269, a.

275

Vocabulary.

clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, cry*.
 con-locō (col-) -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus, *place, station*.
 ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead out, lead forth.
 impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, as-*
sault.
 incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse,*
excite, incite.
 ita, adv. *so, thus*.

ne-que, conj. *neither*. neque
 . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.
 nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn,*
find out. Perf. *know*.
 praemium, -ī, n. *reward*.
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.
 rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f.
republic, commonwealth.
 spēs, speī, f. *hope*.
 tamen, adv. *nevertheless, yet*.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive of Result with ut and ut nōn.

276. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of regō (513) and capiō (514).

277.

Model Sentences.

1. Hostēs ita terrentur ut fugiant, *the enemy are so frightened that they flee*.

2. Hostēs ita terrēbantur ut fugerent, *the enemy were so frightened that they fled*.

3. Is miles tam fortis erat ut ā duce laudārētur, *that soldier was so brave that he was praised by the general*.

4. Is puer tam malus est ut ā magistrō nōn laudētur, *that boy is so bad that he is not praised by the teacher*.

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express a *result*, and that a negative result is introduced by ut nōn. Compare these model sentences with those illustrating *purpose* (253), and observe that a negative purpose is introduced by nē.

b. Result clauses with the perfect subjunctive will be treated later.

278. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with ut and ut nōn to express result.*

279. 1. Accidit ut, —

ostendam, dūcātur, capiās, capiātur, cupiantur.

2. Accidit ut, —

cupiāmus, cupiantur, dūcātis, mittantur, faciam.

3. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —

vincerēmus, mitterētis, dēfenderet, pōnerentur.

4. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —

facerētis, fugerētis, mitterētur, vincerentur.

280. 1. It happens that, — *accidit ut*

I take, I lead, he sends, he departs, they display.

2. It happens that, —

we learn, we are led, you are conquered, you throw.

3. It happened that, —

they did not defend, they did not receive, they were not led out.

281. *accidit* Vocabulary.

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [ad, cadō], *fall upon; happen.*

aut, conj. *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnit-
tus [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, understand. Perf. know.*

cōpia, -arum (pl. of cōpia, 216), *f. troops, forces.*

diligēns, -entis, *industrious, diligent.*

eō, adv. *thither, to that place.*

fluctus, -ūs, m. *wave.*

paucus, -a, -um (generally plu.), *few, little.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule, reign.*

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety.*

spatium, -ī, n. *space, room.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.* — *result*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

vix, adv. *with difficulty, hardly.*

In the following sentences both purpose and result clauses are found.

282. 1. Is miles tam fidus erat ut Rōmam ā suō duce mitterētur. 2. Eō missus est ut epistulās ad cōsulem portāret. 3. Quis nostrūm est tam sapiēns ut omnia cōgnōscat? 4. Puerī, este tam diligentēs ut plūrima discātis. 5. Recipite vōs¹ ad silvās nē ab hostibus capiāminī. 6. Nōs¹ recēpimus tantā celeritātē² ut nēmō caperētur. 7. In silvis tam diū manēbāmus ut hostēs impetum in nōs nōn facerent. 8. Hostēs tam dēfessi erant ut multōs diēs aciem nōn instruērent. 9. Nostri³ in proximum collem sē recēpērunt nē Galli superiōrem locum occupārent. 10. Itā ācritēr pūgnātum est⁴ ut paucī aut nostrōrum aut illōrum relinquerentur. 11. Rōmulus ita ā populō amātus est ut multōs annōs rēgnāret.

283. 1. The waves were of so great size⁵ that in a short time the ships were filled with water. 2. So fierce⁶ was the enemies' attack that our men put all hope of safety in flight. 3. The soldiers are neither so terrified as to flee, nor so eager as to make an attack. 4. Labienus, lead out the troops from the camp in order to draw up the line of battle. 5. So great were the forces of the enemy that Labienus departed from that place. 6. We all desire peace in order that we may educate our children. 7. Between the mountain and the river the space is so narrow that the army makes its way with difficulty. 8. That horse is so spirited that he is not easily led.

¹ Accusative.

² 93.

³ Cf. 273, note 1.

⁴ *It was fought = they fought, or the battle was fought.*

⁵ 140.

⁶ Acer.

LESSON XLV.

Numerals.

284. Learn the cardinals (505) :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria.
G.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
AC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
AB.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLU.
N.	duo	duae	duo	mille	milia
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus
AC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
AB.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus

a. In what respects does the declension of *ūnus* vary from that of *bonus*? Compare the declension of *hic* and *ille* (100). Observe that *trēs* is declined like the plural of *brevis*, 163.

b. The cardinal numerals from *quattuor* to *centum* inclusive are indeclinable : *quattuor hominēs, four men; quattuor hominum, of four men.*

c. The hundreds, not including *centum*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

d. *Mille* in the singular is an indeclinable adjective ; in the plural it is a neuter noun, and is followed by the partitive genitive : *mille hominēs, a thousand men; tria mīlia hominum, three thousand men.*

e. In *vīgintī ūnus, vīgintī duo, centum ūnus*, and similar cases, the declinable numeral is still inflected, as when standing alone : *centum tria proelia, one hundred and three battles.*

285. 1. Ūnus collis, ūnius hōrae, ūnī legiōnī. 2. Duo impetūs, cum duābus manibus. 3. Tribus portubus, tria nōmina, ā tribus rūsticīs. 4. Quattuor impetūs, cum quattuor manibus. 5. Decem vulnera, sexāgintā diēs. 6. Vigintī mulierēs, cum ūnā et vigintī mulieribus. 7. Duodētrigintā gradūs, duae et vigintī domūs. 8. Centum annī, ducentae mātērēs.

286. 1. In one plain, in two battles. 2. For seven lieutenants, with eighteen legions. 3. Forty-one things, fifty-three birds. 4. Of seventy-five steps, with a hundred and one steps. 5. With a thousand paces, with eight thousand paces.

287. 1. Ūna avis vēr (*spring*) nōn facit. 2. Rōmulus, primus Rōmānōrum rēx, trigintā septem annōs rēgnāvit. 3. Flūmen centum pedēs lātum, vigintī duōs pedēs altum fuit. 4. Caesar quinquāgintā sex annōs vixit (*lived*). 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus nātū māximus est. 6. Mōns decem milia pedum altus fuit. 7. Filius meus duōbus annīs est minor nātū quam tua filia. 8. Tū mē misisti ut ēius nōmen cōgnōscerem. 9. Eōrum quinque milia fūgērunt nē caperentur.

288. 1. Alexander the Great reigned only¹ thirteen years. 2.² Cicero lived to be sixty-three years old. 3. There were ten thousand soldiers³ in the plain on that day. 4. We had been in the city nine hours. 5. We send him to do your task. 6. Flee, boys, so as not to be taken !

¹ Omit.

² Express as in **287**, 4.

³ See **284**, *d*.

289.

Colloquium.

FRATER ET SORORCULA.

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
come walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre?
whither

Nōnne in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
=yes

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen —
but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum
hesitate as you say
 ambulās libenter?

S. Nōlī mē rīdēre, mī frāter. Metuō anguēs.
don't laugh at fear snakes

Frīgidus, Ō puerī, fugite hinc, latet anguis in herbā,
cold hence lurks snake grass

ut cantat Vergilius.
sings

F. Nōlī metuere, mea sorōrcula. Venī; repperī ubi
strawberries ripe are come I have found
 frāga mātūra sint.

S. O quam suāve! In mē nōn iam est mora.
how delightful no longer

F. Domī manēre est admodum molestum.
downright stupid

S. Ista sunt, neque mihi iam est in animō.
those things are = yes indeed.

F. Ecce, frāga! iam corbulās complēbimus. Nōnne
lo = here are now baskets
 est suāvissimum?
jolly



DENARIUS.

LESSON XLVI.

Numerals.—Continued.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

290. Learn the first twenty-one ordinals, and read the rest. The ordinals are declined like *bonus*. (500.)

291. The following adjectives have the ending *-ius* in the genitive singular of all genders, and *-ī* in the dative; the plural is regular:—

- 2 (*alius, alia, aliud, another.* § 502 *tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all.*
alter, altera, alterum, the ūllus, -a, -um, any.
other (of two). 4 *ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.*
 2 (*neuter, neutra, neutrum, nei- uter, utra, utrum, which (of*
ther (of two). [no. *two)?*
nūllus, -a, -um, no one, none, uterque, utraque, utrumque,
 1 (*sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole. each (of two), both.*

all these 10 adjectives are declined like al
Paradigm. They have Gen = ius; Dat

292.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
G.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>
D.	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
Ac.	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
AB.	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

It also has a plur.
 a. *alius . . . alius, one . . . another.*

aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.

alius . . . aliud, one one thing, another another.

alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

293.

Vocabulary.

ante Christum nātum, before the birth of Christ = B.C. nōbilis, -e [nōscō], of high birth, noble.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say. orbis, -is, m. (orbi-), circle: 3rd decl.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, give. 1st con. orbis terrarum, the world. *descriptive gen.*

familia, -ae, f. household.

sempiternus, -a, -um [sem-

ingenium, -ī, n. genius.

per], everlasting.

Vergilius, -ī, m. Vergil.

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], pleasure.

294. 1. Rōma duōs hominēs summī ingenī, alterum imperātōrem, alterum poētā, habuit. 2. Alterius familia nōbilis, alterius rūstica¹ fuit. 3. Nulli imperātōri, nulli poētae, māior laus est data quam illis. 4. Caesar victor fuit tōtius Galliae. 5. Vergilius tōtī orbī terrarum voluptātem dedit. 6. Utrī fuit melior fōrtūna? 7. Nātus est² Caesar centēsīmō annō ante Christum nātum. 8. Nātus est Vergilius annō septuāgēsīmō ante Christum nātum. 9. Neutrius fuit vita longissima, sed utriusque erit laus sempiterna. 10. Dē illis hominibus alius aliud dicet, nōs utrumque laudāmus.

295. 1. On the second day the camp was moved. 2. By the bravery of the tenth legion alone the whole army was saved. 3. We shall remain three days at Rome, the sixth, seventh, and eighth. 4. But on the ninth day we shall hasten without any delay to the mountains. 5. The king had ruled so well that the whole people loved him. 6. Vergil was thirty years younger³ than Caesar. 7. To neither was granted a very long life. 8. Some will give greater praise to the one, others to the other.

¹ Of the country.

² Nātus est = was born.

³ See p. 80, note 1.

LESSON XLVII.

The Infinitive used as in English.

296. Learn the indicative, the infinitive, the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum** (517), and review the infinitives present and perfect of **sum** and the model verbs.

a. **Possum** is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. To inflect **possum**, prefix the syllable **pot** to the forms of **sum**, changing **t** to **s** before **s**, and dropping the **f** of **fuī**, **fueram**, etc.

297. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Errāre est humānum**, *to err is human.*
2. **Potui vidēre**, *I could (was able to) see.*
3. **Urbs capta esse dicitur**, *the city is said to have been taken.*
4. **Puella esse bona cupiēbat**, *the girl wished to be good.*
5. **Nōs esse bonōs cupiunt**, *they desire us to be good.*

a. Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used precisely as in English. These uses, as presenting no difficulty of syntax, have been illustrated in exercises of preceding lessons without comment. Cf. 1 with **212**, 10.

b. The infinitive used as in 2 and 4, to complete the meaning of the main verb, is called the *complementary infinitive*.

c. Note that the predicate adjective **bona** (also the participle **capta**) agrees with the subject of the main verb.

298. Rule.—*A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

d. In 5, **nōs** is called the subject of the infinitive **esse**. Note that here the adjective after the infinitive agrees with the subject of the infinitive.

299. Rule. — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

300. 1. Dux equitātum terrere et fugare potest. 2. Castra movēri et pōnī potuērunt.¹ 3. Puer discere potuisse dicitur. 4. Discēdere, fugere potuimus. 5. Illae mātres amāri et iuvāri debent. 6. Amātae esse dicuntur. 7. Properābō ut tē iuvāre possim. 8. Ille² properāvit ut nōs iuvāre posset. 9. Cūr nōn properāvimus ut eōs recipere possēmus? 10. Tē fortem benignumque esse cupiēbant. 11. Iter breve fuisse dicitur. 12. Militēs vulnerātī esse dicuntur.

301. 1. You can carry and throw a spear. 2. They can read and write. 3. Who was not able to think and learn? 4. They will be able to take the town. 5. You bid me to be adorned and to delight. 6. They are said to have been terrified and routed. 7. He was said to have been brave and to have conquered. 8. They were thought to have labored and received a reward. 9. The army was thought to be getting defeated.³ 10. He bade you be diligent.

302. 1. Vidēri⁴ est nōn semper esse. 2. Vergilius et Caesar māximī ingenī⁵ fuisse putantur; uter māior fuisse dicitur? 3. Quis nostrū rem pūblicam cōservāri nōn cupit? 4. Is quī rem pūblicam cōservāre tentābit et vītā prō eā dabit, laudem recipiet sempiternam. 5. Quis māius virtūtis praemium recipere aut cupere

¹ As the subject *castra* is plural, the verb must be plural.

² See 245, a.

³ Present passive infinitive.

⁴ See page 96, note 3.

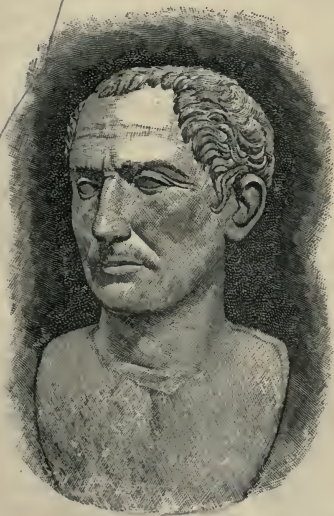
⁵ See 140.

potest? 6. Prō patriā, prō salūte pūblicā vitam dare dēbēmus. 7. Nēmō tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut hostium impetum nōn timēret. 8. Alter hōc pēsum, ūter illud facere poterat; sed neuter utrumque pēsum¹ facere poterat. 9. Exercitus hostium inopiā² aquae magis³ labōrāvisse nostrō exercitū dicēbātur. 10. Quī parēns liberōs suōs esse bonōs nōn cupit?

¹ Utrumque pēsum = *both tasks*.

² See 132.

³ *More*.



GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR.

LESSON XLVIII.

The Demonstratives *iste, idem, ipse.*

303.

Paradigms.

iste, that, that of yours.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>	
G. <i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	
D. <i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	
AC. <i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>	
AB. <i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	

idem, same.

N. <i>idem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
G. <i>ēius'dem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	{ <i>eīs'dem</i> <i>iīs'dem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
AC. <i>eun'dem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>e'adem</i>
AB. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	{ <i>eīs'dem</i> <i>iīs'dem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

ipse, self (himself, etc.).

N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
AC. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
AB. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

a. *Iste* is declined like *ille* (100).

b. *Idem* is declined like *is* (119), with *m* changed to *n* before the suffix *dem*.

c. Wherein does the declension of *ipse* vary from that of *bonus*?

d. Decline together *istud caput, idem diēs, ipsa rēs.*

304.

Model Sentences.

1. *Istam epistulam lēgī, I read that letter of yours.*
2. *Ēōdem diē ad tē epistulam mīsī, on the same day I sent a letter to you.*
3. *Imperātor ipse exercitum dūxit, the general himself led the army.*
4. *Ipsē exercitum dūxistī, you led the army yourself.*

e. *Iste* and *īdem* are used as demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns. Cf. 101, a.

f. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the demonstrative of the second person: *iste equus*, or *iste tuus equus*, *that horse of yours*. Cf. 100, b and c. *Iste* also sometimes denotes contempt. *Īdem* is used just as "same" is in English.

g. *Ipsē, self*, the emphatic appositive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun (expressed or understood) with which it agrees as an adjective. It must be carefully distinguished from *sē, self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic:

homō sē culpāvit nimium, the man blamed himself too much;
homō frātre, tum sē ipsum culpāvit, the man blamed his brother, then himself.

305.

Vocabulary.

sagitta, ae, f. = arrow
arcus, -ūs, m. bow; p. 73.

Asia, -ae, f. Asia.

barbarus, -ī, m. a barbarian.

Dārēus, -ī, m. Darius.

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, contend, fight.

dīvītiāe, -ārum, f. (pl.) riches.

herī, adv. yesterday.

imperium, -ī, n. power, rule; empire.

perīculum, -ī, n. danger, peril.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, proclaim, boast.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, go forward, advance, proceed.

Sōcratēs, -is, m. Socrates.

vultus, -ūs, m. countenance. — visage.

306. 1. Dē istīs rēbus ad tē scribere mox poterō. 2. Nēmō quī dē sē ipsō praedicat esse sapiēns dīcitur. 3. Ipsī¹ vestrī amīcī vōs culpāvērunt. 4. Ista vestra pēnsa mihi sunt grātissima. 5. Uterque vestrūm est idem quī² semper fuit. 6. Nōmen ipsius³ poētae, cūius librōs nunc legimus, est clārissimum. 7. Militēs tōtius exercitūs ab ūnō imperātōre ductī sunt ut hostis vincere posset. 8. Sōcratēs ille⁴ *et in periculō ipsō et in salūte eundem vultum semper habuisse dīcitur.* 9. Semper erat eōdem vultū. 10. Hodiē eadem facis quae herī. *abl. of person*

307. ALEXANDER ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS.

1. There will soon be a battle. 2. You yourselves have long desired to see this day. 3. Now you will be able to vanquish those⁵ barbarians, who fight with bows and arrows. 4. They are the sāmē soldiers whom you have often defeated. 5. They are led by king Darius himself, whose ancestors⁶ made war on⁷ your country. 6. This day you will fight for⁸ the rule of all Asia. 7. Victory will be yours,⁹ if you have¹⁰ the same brave spirit, the same daring, that¹¹ you have always had. 8. The riches of the king himself, that barbarian, and of all his cities will be yours. Forward!

¹ *Even.*

² *Īdem . . . quī, same . . . as.*

³ *Very.*

⁴ 100, *d.*

⁵ The iste of contempt.

⁶ *Māiōrēs.*

⁷ In with acc.

⁸ Use dē.

⁹ *To you.*

¹⁰ *Shall have.*

¹¹ *Quam.*

LESSON XLIX.

The Indefinite Pronouns.

308.

*Paradigms.**aliquis, some, any (person or thing).*

SINGULAR.		
N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod <i>something</i>
G. alicū'ius	alicū'ius	alicū'ius
D. alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
AC. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
AB. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.		
N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
AC. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
AB. ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. How do the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of *aliquis* and *quis* differ?

quidam, a, a certain (person, thing).

SINGULAR.		
N. quidam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G. cū'ius'dam	cū'iusdam	cū'iusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
AC. quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
AB. quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.		
N. quidam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrun'dam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibus'dam	quibusdam	quibusdam
AC. quōs'dam	quās'dam	quaedam
AB. quibus'dam	quibusdam	quibusdam

b. Other important indefinites declined like **quīdam** are the following :—

is wanting throughout.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
quisquam	—	quidquam (no pl.)	any one (at all).
quīlibet	quaelibet	quidlibet, quodlibet	} any one (you please).
quīvis	quaevis	quidvis, quodvis	
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque	each, every. <i>comp both</i>

c. In the neuter of the indefinites **quid**-forms are used as nouns, **quod**-forms as adjectives.

309.

Vocabulary.

Aegyptus, -ī, f. <i>Egypt</i> (13, 2).	isthmus, -ī, m. <i>isthmus</i> .
certus, -a, -um, <i>certain, trustworthy</i> .	Nīlus, -ī, m. <i>the Nile</i> .
figūra, -ae, f. <i>shape, form</i> .	nūper, adv. [novus], <i>recently</i> .
fōns, fontis, m. <i>fountain, source</i> . See 6 159.	scriptor, -ōris, m. <i>writer</i> .
in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, <i>unknown</i> .	spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>look at</i> . <i>spect</i>
	tantum, adv. [tantus], <i>only</i> .
	vērūs, -a, -um, <i>true</i> . <i>verily</i>

310.

DE AFRICA.

1. Scriptor quīdam vetus scripsit, "Āfrica insulae est similis." 2. Cuīvis, quī Āfricae figūrā spectābit, hōc esse vērūm vidēbitur, nam isthmus angustissimus est inter Asiam et Āfricā. 3. Ab aliis scriptōribus veteribus Aegyptus pars Asiae esse habetur.¹ 4. Antiquis temporibus mākima illius terrae pars incōgnita erat, sed nōn hodiē. "Semper aliquid novī² ex Āfricā." 5. Tum dē Nīlī fontibus nēmō quidquam certī cōgnōverat; nunc eidem fontēs cuilibet nōtī sunt; nam ā quibusdam viris audācibus repertī³ sunt. 6. Nūper quoddam flūmen

¹ *Is considered.*² *See 203.*³ *Have been discovered.*

Āfricae māximum cōgnitum¹ est. 7. Quis vestrū nōmen hūius flūminis dare potest? — Quis nōmina virōrum illōrum quī dē eō repperērunt?²

311. 1. There were two consuls each year in the Roman state. 2. That boy has something in his left hand. 3. I learned something new³ yesterday. What new thing? 4. Certain soldiers of the five hundred tried to flee, so as not to be taken. 5. We do not fear any one at all of those chiefs. 6. A part of each summer we remain in the country.



LESSON L.

312. Reading Lesson.

[See introductory note to LESSON XXI.]

CICERONIS EPISTULA AD TERENTIAM UXOREM.

ANTE CHRISTUM NATUM XLVI.

⁴ Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē epistulīs, quās Philotīmus habēre dicitur, quidquam certī⁵ habēmus. Si quid⁶ erit certī, faciam⁷ tē statim certīorem.⁷ Fac⁸ ut valētūdinem tuam cūrēs. Valē.⁹

¹ Has become known.

² Have found out. ³ See 203.

⁴ The Romans often began their letters with the abbreviations of these five words:

S. V. B. E. E. V.

⁵ See 203.

⁶ Regularly used in the sense of aliquid after sī, nē, nisi, num.

⁷ Make more certain = inform.

⁸ Be sure (p. 103, note 1).

⁹ Good-bye.

313.

DE VITIIS HOMINUM.

Iuppiter¹ nōbis duās pērās imposuit: alteram, quae nostris vitiis² complēta est, post tergum nōbis dedit³; alteram, in quā aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus ea vitia quae ipsi peccāmus. Sed si alii peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

314.

A FATHER TO HIS DAUGHTERS.

If you are in good health, it is well. I am in good health. Neither in your⁴ letters, nor in the letters of your mother, has there been anything new at all about the wound which your poor brother is said to have received. If anything new happens,⁵ be sure⁶ to inform me without any⁷ delay. Meanwhile, be sure also to look out for your health. Good-bye.⁶

315.

Vocabulary.

ad-ventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō],
coming, arrival.
con-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus
[teneō], contain, hold.
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, care
for, take care.
im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus
[in], put or place upon.
peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sin,
commit (a fault).
pectus, -oris, n. breast.

pēra, -ae, f. bag, wallet.
quā-rē, conj. wherefore.
statim, adv. immediately.
sus-pendō, -ere, -dī, -sus
[sub], hang up, hang.
tergum, -ī, n. back.
valētūdō, -inis [valeō], f.
state of health, health.
vitium, -ī, n. fault, vice.
vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
blame, censure.

¹ See 499.² Ablative with complēta.³ Dedit = imposuit.⁴ 247, a.⁵ Shall have happened.⁶ Not singular.⁷ Ūllus is the adjective for any after a negative, sine, etc.

LESSON LI.

Accusative and Infinitive.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

316. Learn the future infinitives of *sum* and the model verbs.

317. *Model Sentences.*

DIRECT STATEMENT.

INDIRECT STATEMENT.

1. *Tū scribis, you are writing.*

Dicimus tē scribere, we say that you are writing.

2. *Epistula scripta est, a letter has been written.*

Putāmus epistolam scriptam esse, we think that a letter has been written.

3. *Tū scribēs, you will write.*

Cōgnōvimus tē scriptūrum esse, we know you will write.

a. A comparison of each sentence of the first column with the corresponding sentence of the second column will show what is meant by "Direct Statement" and "Indirect Statement."

b. Compare now each Latin sentence of the second column with the translation. Observe that after the leading verb in the Latin, the accusative and infinitive are employed, and that the accusative is translated by the nominative, and the infinitive by the indicative. Observe also that there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to *that*, which commonly introduces the Indirect Statement in English.

318. Rule.—*Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative.*

319.

Tenses of the Infinitive.

PRESENT.

dīcit	} tē scribere,	{	he says that you are writing.
dīcet			he will say that you are writing.
dīxit			he said that you were writing.
dīcit	} epistulam scribī,	{	he says that the letter is being written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter is being written.
dīxit			he said that the letter was being written.

FUTURE.

dīcit	} tē scriptūrum esse,	{	he says that you will write.
dīcet			he will say that you will write.
dīxit			he said that you would write.
dīcit	} epistulam scriptum irī, ¹	{	he says that the letter will be written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter will be written.
dīxit			he said that the letter would be written.

PERFECT.

dīcit	} tē scripsisse,	{	he says that you wrote (have written).
dīcet			he will say that you wrote (have written).
dīxit			he said that you wrote (had written).
dīcit	} epistulam scriptam esse,	{	he says that the letter was (has been) written.
dīcet			he will say that the letter was (has been) written.
dīxit			he said that the letter was (had been) written.

¹ More commonly fore ut epistula scribātur, etc.

a. The present infinitive represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the leading verb. The future infinitive represents an action as *yet to take place* after the time denoted by the leading verb. The perfect infinitive represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the leading verb.

320. Rule.—*The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.*

321.*Vocabulary.*

ad-sum, adesse, adfuī, adfu- tūrus, <i>be present, be here.</i>	pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, <i>drive away, rout, defeat.</i>
Alexander, -drī, m. <i>Alexander.</i>	sēmentis, -is, f. (sēmenti-), (acc. -im or -em), <i>sowing.</i>
arbor, -oris, f. <i>tree.</i> —§13, 2.	solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, <i>loose, break.</i>
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>sing.</i>	spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], <i>hope.</i>
frīgus, -oris, n. <i>cold.</i>	tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, <i>cover.</i>
iam, adv. <i>already, now, at last.</i> nōn iam, <i>no longer.</i>	vēr, vēris, n. <i>spring.</i>
in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], <i>begin.</i>	

322. 1. Vēr adest; vēre¹ hiems pellitur et frigus solvitur. 2. Vidēmus vēr adesse et vēre hiemem pelli et frīgus solvī. 3. Terra nōn iam nive tēcta² est. 4. Vidēmus terram nōn iam nive tēctam esse. 5. Multae avēs in arboribus cantant et aliae mox cantābunt. 6. Nōvimus multās avēs in arboribus cantāre, aliās mox cantātūrās esse. 7. Agricola arāre et sēmentem facere incēpērunt. 8. Vidēmus agricolās arāre et sēmentem facere incēpisse. 9. Agricola spērat dīvitiās sibi futūrās esse, et nōs eadem nōbis ipsis spērāmus. 10. Este benignī, omnēs deī, agricolis validīs, ut contentī sint.

¹ See 84.² The participle as an adjective, hence *is covered*.

323. 1. The sources of the Nile were unknown in ancient times. 2. It was thought by a certain ancient writer that the sources of the Nile were unknown. 3. The brave Greeks will defeat the barbarians, the army of Darius himself. 4. Alexander said that the Greeks would defeat Darius himself. 5. We think that to no general has greater praise been given than to Alexander. 6. Was not Alexander born¹ three hundred and fifty-six years before the birth of Christ?

LESSON LII.

Fourth Conjugation.—Ī-Verbs.

Audiō (STEM *audi-*), *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus*.

324. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō* (515).

a. Compare the forms of *audiō* with those of *regō* and *capiō*.

325. 1. *Audiō, audiēbam, audiam.* 2. *Audīt, audiēbat, audiet.* 3. *Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur.* 4. *Audiar, audiāris.* 5. *Audī, audire.* 6. *Audimur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur.* 7. *Audire, audirī.* 8. *Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis.* 9. *Audiunt, audiuntur.* 10. *Ut audiant, ut audirent.* 11. *Nē audiat, nē audiret.* 12. *Audīte, audimini.*

a. Like *audiō*, inflect the same tenses of *mūniō, fortify, pūniō, punish*, and *veniō, come*.

¹ *Nātus est.*

326. 1. He hears, he is heard. 2. He was hearing, he was heard. 3. He will fortify, it will be fortified. 4. They fortify, it is fortified. 5. They were fortifying, they will be fortified. 6. To fortify, to come, to punish. 7. To be fortified, to be punished. 8. Come, fortify, punish. 9. We fortify, we come, we punish. 10. You come, you punish, you are punished. 11. That I may come, that you may fortify, that he may be punished. 12. That he might not be punished, that you might not come.

327.*Vocabulary.*

āēr, āēris, m. (acc. āēra), *air*.

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, *open. aperture*

cantus, -ūs, m. *song, singing.*

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *guard, protect, defend.*

flōs, flōris, m. *flower.*

grāmen, -inis, n. *grass.*

lēnis, -e, *mild, gentle.*

mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *fortify.*

porta, -ae, f. *gate.*

pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *punish.*

re-periō, -īre, repperī, reperi-
tus, *find, discover.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive, know (by the senses).*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

vestiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *clothe. vestment*
The Pres. shall be vested.

328. 1. Sermōnem sapientium audire amāmus. 2. Audimus Hannibalem annō ducentēsīmō secundō ante Christum nātum victum esse. 3. Lēgātus sē montem ūnum tōtum diem tenuisse dixit. 4. Quāque hiēme quīdam amīcus ad mē venit et duōs aut trēs diēs manet. 5. Vēr terram aperit vestitque grāmine flōribusque. 6. Tum quōque¹ sentimus āēra esse lēniōrem. 7. Mox

¹ Observe the difference between quōque, *also*, and quōque, *ablative of quisque, each*.

avēs domōs veterēs reperient, et eārum cantūs in arboribus audientur. 8. Vēre cantum audimus eārum ayium quae hieme audiri nōn possunt. 9. Hieme tantum est frigus ut cibus ab eis nōn reperiri possit. 10. Audimus duās legiōnēs in Galliam missum iri.

329. 1. I am saying the very¹ same things that you heard from your friend. 2. Did you not say that you had begun sowing? 3. On account of the cold I could not begin. 4. By night a messenger comes to Caesar. 5. He says that a town friendly² to the Romans is guarded by day and night. 6. "The enemy," says he, "strong in number³ of men, is near at hand. 7. The townsmen are fortifying and guarding the town. 8. If you come,⁴ they will open their gates to you. 9. They hope you will come soon with a large force. 10. The danger will be greater if there is any⁵ delay."

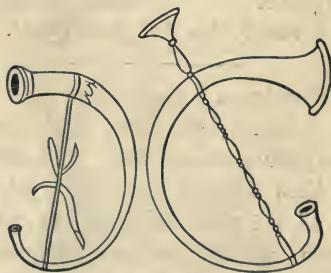
¹ See 306, note 3.

² Amicus as an adjective.

³ See 168.

⁴ Shall come.

⁵ Ūllus.



CORNUA.

LESSON LIII.

Fourth Conjugation. — *Continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

330. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect and future infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō* (515).

a. Observe that the endings -ī, -istī, -it, etc., are the same in all the conjugations.

331. 1. *Audivit, audiverat, audiverit.* 2. *Auditus est, auditus erat, auditus erit.* 3. *Audivērunt, audiverant, audiverint.* 4. *Audivistī, audita es.* 5. *Audistis,¹ auditae estis.* 6. *Auditum est, auditum erat, auditum erit.* 7. *Audivimus, audītī sumus.* 8. *Audivisse, auditus esse.* 9. *Audiī,² audieram, audierō.* 10. *Auditus sum, auditus eram, auditus erō.* 11. *Auditūrus esse.*

332. 1. He has punished, he has been punished. 2. He had fortified, it had been fortified. 3. You have come, you had come, you will have come. 4. They have fortified, they have punished, they have come. 5. We fortified, we punished, we came. 6. To have fortified, to have punished, to have come. 7. To have been fortified, to have been punished. 8. To be about to open, to be about to find. 9. To be about to be fortified, to be about to be punished.

¹ For *audivistis*. See 337, *b*.

² For *audiī*.

333.

Model Sentences.

1. Timeō ut veniat, } I fear that he is not coming, or
 2. Timeō nē nōn veniat, } will not come.
 3. Timeō nē veniat, I fear that he is coming, or will come.

a. Observe that verbs of fearing are followed by ut and nē with the subjunctive, and that then ut and nē seem to exchange meanings: ut = *that not*; nē = *that*.

b. Observe that in place of ut, nē nōn may be used with the same meaning, as in 2.

c. Notice that the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

334.

Vocabulary.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī,	nihil, indecl., n. <i>nothing</i> .
-ventus, surround.	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus,
folium, -ī, n. <i>leaf</i> .	know, know how.
fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], en-	sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plu.);
durance, fortitude.	sun.
molestus, -a, -um, trouble-	turpis, -e, base, disgraceful.
some, tiresome.	vōx, vōcis, f. voice, word.

335. 1. Timēmus ut bonum cōnsilium capiās. 2. Timēmus nē malum cōnsilium capiās. 3. Timēbat ut valērem; timēbat nē aeger essem. 4. Alius alium in pūgnā iuvābat neque timēbant nē ab hostibus circumvenirentur. 5. Lēgātī timuērunt nē frūmentum tōtī exercitui praeberī nōn posset. 6. Audivimus castra ab imperātōre mūnita esse. 7. Sī frīgus hiemis solvi incipiet, et sī terra sē aperiet,¹ agricolae sēmentem facient. 8. Scimus aestātem

¹ Sē aperiet = *opens*, i.e. *softens*.

arborēs foliis vestitūram (esse).¹ 9. Scīmus quoque āera² vēre³ lēniōrem futūrum.¹ 10. Spērāmus avīs mox adfutūrās et in arboribus cantātūrās. 11. Timēmus nē noster sermō dē vēre, avibus, grāmine, flōribus sit molestissimus, sed quid aliud facere possumus?

336. 1. We know that the Romans were trained in the arts by the Greeks. 2. Flowers are opened by the light of the sun. 3. The lieutenant with a small band guarded the citadel for two days. 4. To know nothing is exceedingly⁴ disgraceful. 5. To know many things is very useful. 6. We fear that the camp will not be fortified. 7. Did you not hear the voice of your father? 8. Those words of yours I have heard. 9. The boy feared that his brother would be punished on account of his laziness.

¹ In the compound forms of the infinitive *esse* is often omitted.

² See 327.

³ See 155.

⁴ See 194, c.



MILITES ROMANI.

LESSON LIV.

Review of the Four Conjugations.

337. The conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the ending *-re* of the present infinitive active. Thus:

I. <i>amāre</i> ,	characteristic vowel	<i>ā</i> .
II. <i>monēre</i> ,	"	" <i>ē</i> .
III. <i>regere</i> ,	"	" <i>e</i> .
IV. <i>audīre</i> ,	"	" <i>ī</i> .

a. Note that verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

b. In the perfect and cognate tenses, *v* between two vowels is often lost, when contraction may take place: *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*, *audīstis* for *audīvistis*, *audieram* for *audīveram*.

338. 1. *Amāmus*, *monēmus*, *regimus*, *audimus*. 2. *Laudant*, *dēlent*, *regunt*, *capiunt*, *veniunt*. 3. *Superābam*, *terrēbam*, *pōnēbam*, *cupiēbam*, *audiēbam*. 4. *Portāvistī*, *habuistī*, *posuistī*, *fūgistī*, *mūnistī*. 5. *Parāvērunt*, *tenuērunt*, *dēfendērunt*, *cupiērunt*, *pūniērunt*. 6. *Amābit*, *monēbit*, *mittet*, *iaciet*, *veniet*. 7. *Fugātur*, *terrētur*, *pōnitur*, *capitur*, *vestitur*. 8. *Servāberis*, *tenēberis*, *ducēris*, *iaciēris*, *vestiēris*. 9. *Laudārī*, *praeberī*, *dicī*, *iacī*, *vestirī*. 10. *Ēducāta est*, *monita est*, *ēducta est*, *capta est*, *pūnita est*. 11. *Portāverātis*, *rīserātis*, *rēxerātis*, *cēperātis*, *audīverātis*. 12. *Amāsse*, *amārit*, *nōsse*, *audistī*.

339. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou takest, thou hearest. 2. I shall praise, I shall remain, I shall defend, I shall take, I shall fortify. 3. Fight,

destroy, defend, throw, guard. 4. To have fought, to have destroyed, to have defended, to have thrown, to have guarded. 5. We are praised, we are moved, we are conquered, we are thrown, we are guarded. 6. It has been carried, he has been frightened, she has been led, it has been thrown, he has been heard. 7. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be captured, he will be clothed.

In the following exercises find sentences illustrating the various uses of the subjunctive and infinitive thus far given :

340. 1. Vēnī ut manērem. 2. Tam tristēs sumus ut ridēre nōn possimus. 3. Veniēbās nē lugērēmus. 4. Dixērunt Mārcum esse sapientem. 5. Dux timuit ut militēs venīrent. 6. Militēs timent nē hostēs veniant. 7. Vōs nōn timētis nē amīcī nōn veniant. 8. Venient ut maneant. 9. Dīcitur¹ risisse. 10. Dīcitur² eum risisse. 11. Cornēlia filiōs suōs ēducāvit ut flōrērent. 12. Cōsul Catilinam, patriae hostem, monuit nē in urbe manēret. 13. Agricola vēr mox adfutūrum⁶⁰⁰ spērat, ut sēmentem faciat.

341. 1. You have come to stay. 2. He says that you will stay. 3. The boy is so lazy that he cannot learn. 4. The master fears that he will not learn. 5. He stays at home that he may not learn. 6. The senate sent a messenger to the army to carry letters to the consul. 7. Cicero said that there was nothing⁶⁰⁰ certain about the letters. 8. Why did not Jupiter put the wallet that contains our own faults before our breasts, so that we might see them?

¹ Here *dīcitur* is personal; *he is said*.

² Here *dīcitur* is impersonal; *it is said (that)*.

LESSON LV.

Derivation.

342. To aid in acquiring a Latin vocabulary, a close observation of related words is very important. Beginning with **270**, the vocabularies have been prepared with a view to help the learner in this direction. The parts of compound words are separated by hyphens (*re-cipiō* [*capiō*]). Related words that have been previously used are put in brackets (*nōbilis* [*nōscō*]). These are not to be considered necessarily as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, but as *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem*. English derivatives are indicated by *different type*. In the general vocabulary further attention is given to this subject.

The following groups of words, selected mainly from previous vocabularies, should be carefully studied :

343.*Models.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. arma, <i>arms.</i> | armō, <i>arm.</i> |
| 2. flōs, <i>flower.</i> | flōreō, <i>bloom.</i> |
| 3. cūra, <i>care.</i> | cūrō, <i>care for.</i> |

a. Give the verbs with their meanings that correspond to the following nouns : *dōnum*, *gift*, *culpa*, *blame*, *bellum*, *war*, *fuga*, *flight*, *laus*, *praise*.

b. Give the nouns with their meanings that correspond to the following verbs : *liberō*, *set free*, *pūgnō*, *fight*, *spērō*, *hope*, *terreō*, *frighten*, *vulnerō*, *wound*.

344.*Models.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. audāx, <i>bold.</i> | audācia, <i>boldness.</i> |
| 2. dīligēns, <i>diligent.</i> | dīligentia, <i>diligence.</i> |
| 3. amīcus, <i>friendly.</i> | amīcitia, <i>friendship.</i> |

a. Give the abstract nouns with their meanings that correspond to the following : *prūdēns*, *prudent*; *piger*, *lazy*; *sciēns* (P. of *sciō*), *knowing*; *vīctor*, *victor*.

345.

Models.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>iuvenis</i> , <i>young</i> . | <i>iuventūs</i> , <i>youth</i> . |
| 2. <i>māgnus</i> , <i>great</i> . | <i>māgnitūdō</i> , <i>greatness</i> . |
| 3. <i>liber</i> , <i>free</i> . | <i>libertās</i> , <i>freedom</i> . |

a. Give the abstract nouns corresponding to *vir*, *man*, *fortis*, *brave*.

b. Form a noun like *māgnitūdō*, meaning *width*, from *lātus*, *wide*; another from *altus*, *high*, and define it.

c. Form a noun like *libertās*, meaning *citizenship*, from *cīvis*, *citizen*.

346.

Models.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>arō</i> , <i>plough</i> , v. | <i>arātrum</i> , <i>plough</i> , n. |
| 2. <i>ōrnō</i> , <i>adorn</i> . | <i>ōrnāmentum</i> , <i>adornment</i> . |
| 3. <i>rōdō</i> , <i>gnaw</i> . | <i>rōstrum</i> , <i>beak</i> . |

a. What is the force of the endings *-trum* and *-mentum* respectively in the above words? Give the meaning of *monumentum* from *moneō*, *remind*.

347.

Models.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>scribō</i> , <i>write</i> . | <i>scriptor</i> , <i>writer</i> . |
| 2. <i>vincō</i> (<i>vic-</i>), <i>conquer</i> . | <i>vīctor</i> , <i>conqueror</i> . |
| 3. <i>imperō</i> , <i>command</i> . | <i>imperātor</i> , <i>commander</i> . |

a. Give the meaning of *dator* from *dō*, *give*; of *doctor* from *doceō*, *teach*.

348.

Models.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Āfrica</i> , <i>Africa</i> . | <i>Āfricānus</i> , <i>of Africa</i> , <i>African</i> . |
| 2. <i>Rōma</i> , <i>Rome</i> . | <i>Rōmānus</i> , <i>of Rome</i> , <i>Roman</i> . |
| 3. <i>aurum</i> , <i>gold</i> . | <i>aureus</i> , <i>of gold</i> , <i>golden</i> . |
| 4. <i>faciō</i> , <i>do</i> . | <i>facilis</i> (<i>that may be done</i>), <i>easy</i> . |

a. Observe that the ending *-ānus* denotes *of* or *belonging to*, *-eus*, *made of*, and that *-ilis* denotes *capability*. Give the meaning of *oppidānus*, *adj.*, from *oppidum*, *town*; of *nōbilis*, from *nōscō*, *know*. Form an adjective meaning *wooden* from *lignum*, *wood*.

349.

Models.

1. *pedes*, *foot-soldier*.

peditātus, *body of foot-soldiers, infantry*.

2. *eques*, *horseman*.

equitātus, *body of horsemen, cavalry*.

a. What is the meaning of *comitātus* from *comes*, *comrade*? Compare *senex* with *senātus*, and explain the meaning of the latter.

350. Note the force of the prefixes in the following :

ad-ventus (*ad-veniō*, *come to*), *approach*.

ē-dūcō, *lead out*.

ad-sum, *be near*.

ex-pōnō, *put or set out, expose*.

circum-dūcō, *lead around*.

circum-veniō, *come around, surround*.

im-pōnō [*in*], *put upon, impose*.

com-moveō, *move completely, disturb, alarm*.

in-struō, *build in, instruct*.

com-pleō, *fill completely, fill up*.

prō-cēdō, *go before, go forward, advance, proceed*.

con-tineō [*com, teneō*], *hold together, contain*.

prō-pōnō, *put before, propose*.

difficilis (for *dis-facilis*, *apart from easy*), *difficult*.

re-cipiō, *take back, receive*.

dis-cēdō, *go apart, depart*.

re-dūcō, *lead back*.

re-portō, *carry back*.

NOTE. — Continue in all succeeding vocabularies the study of derivation in this way.

LESSON LVI.

Present and Perfect Participle.

351. Learn the present and perfect participles of the model verbs.

a. Observe that there is no present passive or perfect active participle.

352. Participles are declined like adjectives, and, like them, agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case. The present participle is declined like *prūdēns* (163) with ablative singular ending in *-e*, unless used adjectively; the perfect participle like *bonus*.

353.*Model Sentences.*

- circumstances of*
former 1. Fortissimē dimicāns { cadit, he falls } fighting most
 { cadet, he will fall } bravely.
 { cecidit, he fell }
me 2. Tē in urbe manentem vidī, I saw you while you were staying (you staying) in the city.
mission 3. Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est, the city, though long besieged (having been besieged), was not taken.
mit 4. Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit, because Caesar was moved (having been moved) by this circumstance, he hastened into Gaul.
ditio 5. Dux victus sē recipiet, if the general is defeated (the general defeated), he will retreat.
lower 6. Dōna missa recēpit, he received the gifts which had been sent (the gifts sent).
fact 7. Caesar principem captum Rōmam misit, Caesar took a chieftain and sent him (sent a taken chieftain) to Rome.
adj. 8. Gallia est divisa, Gaul is divided.

a. Observe that the present participle represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 1 and 2.

b. The perfect participle represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7.

c. Observe that what the Latin expresses by a participle is often best expressed in English (1) by a clause beginning with *while, though, because, if*, etc.; (2) by a relative clause; (3) by a verb coördinate with one following.

d. Observe that a perfect participle used with *sum* may lose its idea of time and become virtually an adjective, as in 8.

354.

Vocabulary.

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, rouse, disturb. liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber], set free, liberate.

contrā, prep. w. acc., against. medicus, -ī, m. physician.

Fabricius, -ī, m. Fabricius. Pyrrhus, -ī, m. Pyrrhus.

graviter [gravis], adv. heavily, severely. re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductus, lead back.

historia, -ae, f. history.

venēnum, -ī, n. poison.

inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, vicinus, -a, -um, neighboring.

[faciō], kill.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus,

ira, -ae, f. anger.

bind.

355. 1. Fabricius cōnsul factus contrā Pyrrhum, rēgem quendam, missus est. 2. Accidit ut cōnsul ipse et Pyrrhus castra vicīna habērent. 3. Fabricius timēns nē rēx impetum faceret castra mūnivit. 4. Dē¹ nocte medicus Pyrrhī ad Fabricium vēnit. 5. "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi praemium dederis, dominum meum venēnō interficiam." 6. "Tū, pessimē,²" inquit Fabricius, "ad tuum dominum statim vinctus mittēris." 7. Tum medicum

¹ In.

² Miscreant. See 207.

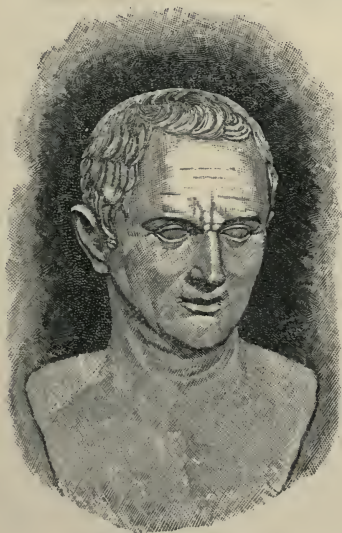
vinctum ad Pyrrhum rēgem redūcī iussit. 8. Sed Pyrrhus irā commōtus¹ medicum nōn interfēcit. 9. Nōne eum graviter pūnivit? 10. Histōria nōn nārrat medicum ā Pyrrhō.pūnitum esse.

356. 1. The Gauls will attack the Romans while they are fortifying their camp. 2.² They ^{part} led their forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. In the plain many animals were found which had been killed. 4. Though moved by anger, we shall not fight. 5. Fabricius heard the physician, but ordered him to be bound. 6. If the physician is set free,³ he will be glad. 7. The physician was very glad, because he was set free.

¹ See 353, 3.

² See 353, 7.

³ See 353, 5.



CICERO.

LESSON LVII.

Deponent Verbs.

THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS.

357. Review the passive voice of the moods and tenses already studied of the model verbs.

358. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. There are deponents of each of the regular conjugations, distinguished, like verbs in the active voice, by the present infinitive. The endings of the infinitive are as follows :

First conjugation . . -ārī	Third conjugation . . -ī
Second conjugation . -ērī	Fourth conjugation . -īrī

a. For the method of giving the principal parts of deponent verbs, see the next vocabulary.

359. Deponents are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, with two exceptions : (1) they substitute the future infinitive active for the passive, — *mīrātūrus esse* in place of *mīrātum īrī* ; (2) they have the participles of both voices :

Present Active
mīrāns, *admiring*.

Future Active
mīrātūrus, *about to admire*.

Present Passive
mīrātus, *having admired*.

Future Passive
mīrandus, *to be admired*.

a. It has been said (351, *a*) that there is no perfect active participle in Latin ; but the perfect participle of deponent verbs is usually active in meaning.

360.

Model Sentences.

1. *Ūtor meā pecūniā, I use my own money.*
2. *Catilina nostrā patientiā abūtitur, Catiline abuses our patience.*
3. *Dux profectus cum equitātū urbe potitus est, the commander, having set out with cavalry, got possession of the city.*
4. *Lūce sōlis fruimur, we enjoy the light of the sun.*

a. A peculiarity of Latin syntax is illustrated in the above sentences. Certain verbs, which, from their meanings we should expect to be transitive, govern the ablative.

361. Rule.—*Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, govern the ablative.*

other verbs govern the acc.

362.

Vocabulary.

ab-ūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, <i>abuse.</i>	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, <i>enjoy.</i>	ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use,</i> <i>employ.</i>
fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, <i>perform.</i>	SEMI-DEPONENTS.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>admire,</i> <i>wonder, wonder at.</i>	audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, <i>dare.</i>
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, <i>get</i> <i>possession of, get, gain.</i>	fidō, -ere, fīsus sum [fīdus], <i>trust.</i>
pro-ficiāscor, -ī, -fectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>	gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, <i>rejoice, be glad.</i>
	soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, <i>be</i> <i>wont, be accustomed.</i>

a. The last four verbs are called *semi-deponents*, because they have only passive forms (with active meanings) in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

363. 1. Abūsus est tuā patientiā. 2. Medicus venē-
nō nōn ūsus est. 3. Castris hostium potitī sumus.
4. Quis sōle et āere nōn fruitur? 5. Tuam vōcem
sequēmur. 6. Profectus est in Ītaliā. 7. Ausus est
in Ītaliā proficiscī.

364. 1. The children wonder at the flowers. 2. They
were wont to perform tasks. 3. We all rejoiced in that
victory.¹ 4. Having been set free, he rejoiced. 5. They
have dared nothing. 6. The general trusted in the valor
of his soldiers.

365. 1. Quivīs² sermōne sapientium fruitur. 2. Frui-
mur lūce quae ā Deō nōbīs datur. 3. Puerī, bene et
fidēliter fūcti estis vestrō pēnsō. 4. Nostrī secūtī hostis
interfēcērunt māgnū numerum. 5. Aliquis ausus est
meis libris ūtī. 6. Tibi fīsus tuum cōnsilium secūtus sum.
7. Imperātor victōriā militum gāvisus est. 8. Militēs
itinera tribus diēbus longiōra facere solitī sunt. 9. Timē-
bam nē puer istis libris nōn cum cūrā ūterētur. 10. Lē-
niōre āere frui solitī erāmus. 11. Putāvimus hostis
nostris castris potitūrōs esse.

366. 1. The soldiers dared to follow, trusting in their
leader. 2. We see that you have followed bad advice,
and that you will be punished.³ 3. Our men will get
possession of the mountain and the plain. 4. In the
camp were found three hundred hostages, whom the
victors set free. 5. The Romans wondered at the great
stature⁴ of the Germans. 6. The army set out⁵ for⁶ the
territories of the Belgae, and made a march of ten days.

¹ See 132.

² See 308, *b*.

³ Pūnitum iri.

⁴ *Size of body.*

⁵ Express by a participle.

⁶ Use in.

367.

Colloquium.

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Ades, mī filiōle, et mihi ostende libellum istum.
little book

F. Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latinum vidēre
here it is
 cupis.

P. Quod pēnsūm tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?
impose teacher

F. Pēnsūm dē verbis dēpōnentibus quae ad coniugā-
deponent
 tiōnēs omnis pertinent.
belong

P. Quam ob rem sic appellantur ista verba?
wherefore so

F. Quia fōrmam activam et significātiōnem passivam
form meaning
 plērumque dēposuērunt. Sic nōs praeceptor docuit.
generally lay aside has taught

P. Quod autem pēnsūm in crāstinum diem imperāvit
 praeceptor?
but for to-morrow has imposed

F. Ad haec addidit praeceptor alia multa. At tū, mī
has added but
 pater, Latinae linguae iam puer studēbās?
already

P. Certē, filiōle, idque vehementer.
right hard

F. Num ego, sī diligenter studuerō, ēruditus ut tū
 erō?
learn learned as

P. Vix tam ēruditus. At iam tibi eundem est
 dormitum.
now must be going to bed

LESSON LVIII.

Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō*.

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	{	<i>volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish, will.</i>
		<i>nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nē, volō], be unwilling, will not.</i>
	{	<i>mālō, mälle, māluī [magis, volō], be more willing, prefer, would (should) rather.</i>

368. Learn the conjugation of *volō, nōlō, mālō*, omitting the perfect subjunctive (519).

369. 1. Vult venīre; dicit sē velle venīre. 2. Nōlunt sequī; dixērunt sē nōlle sequī. 3. Vis discere; scīmus tē velle discere. 4. Voluimus scire. 5. Nōluistī audire. 6. Accidit ut vellet custōdire. 7. Dicitur¹ hōc dōnum māluisse. 8. Putantur voluisse. 9. Volēns aut nōlēns illud pēnsū faciet. 10. Māvult reducī. 11. Nōn vultis instruī. 12. Nōlī² terrērī. 13. Nōlite² circumvenīrī.

370. 1. Do not (*sing.*) fear. 2. Do not (*pl.*) wonder. 3. Do not punish. 4. You wish to be guarded. 5. You (*sing.*) are unwilling to be guarded. 6. He prefers to be set free. 7. He is unwilling to be bound. 8. It happens that he is unwilling to come. 9. We want to enjoy the light. 10. We prefer to perform the task.

¹ He is said.² Do not.

371.

Model Sentences.

1. Iste liber mihi placet m̄ximē, *that book of yours pleases me very much.*
2. Aliquī suis amicis nocent, *some people injure their own friends.*
3. Lēgibus pārere dēbēmus, *we ought to obey the laws.*
4. Frātri persuādet ut hōc faciat, *he persuades his brother to do this.*

a. Observe that the verbs placeō, noceō, pārēō, and persuādeō are intransitive and govern the dative, while the English equivalents are transitive. The same is true of a number of other Latin verbs.

372. Rule. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative.*

373.

Vocabulary.

crēdō, -ēre, crēdidī, crēditus, <i>believe.</i>	placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus, <i>be pleasing to, please.</i>
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, <i>favor.</i>	—
noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, <i>do harm to, injure.</i>	cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus [com, regō], <i>correct.</i>
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus, <i>spare.</i>	prō-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [gradior], <i>go forward,</i> <i>advance, progress.</i>
per-suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -suāsus, <i>persuade. see Gen. Vocab. persuāst.</i>	prōvincia, -ae, f. <i>province.</i> quod, conj. <i>because.</i>

374. 1. Cūr mihi persuādere vultis ut in hortum veniam? 2. Tē in hortum venire volumus ut fontēs

arborēsque videās. 3. Puer ūsus magistri libris nihil discēbat. 4. Sua¹ cuique placent. 5. Istī fābulae crēdere nōn possum. 6. Aliōrum vitia vituperāre mālumus quam nostra corrigere. 7. Militēs urbe potitī neque mulieribus neque liberis pepercērunt. 8. Nōli amicōrum patientiā abūtī. 9. Et sibi et rei pūblicae nocēbit, si longius² prōgrediētur. 10. Militēs gāvīsī sunt quod urbe cum omnī praedā potitī erant.

375. 1. The whole province favored Pompey alone.³
 2. We cannot follow the enemy without great peril.
 3. That night was without a moon, so that we could not see.
 4. Why are you unwilling to perform your tasks?
 5. Why do you wish to injure me, your best friend?
 6. The boy, though often warned, was not wont to correct his faults.
 7. We wish to go forward to the end of the journey.
 8. Any one you please would rather be loved than feared.

¹ *His own (things).* ² See 194, c. ³ See 291.



TESTUDO.

LESSON LIX.

376. Reading Lesson.

ARS MEMORIAE.

Themistoclēs fuit vir ingenī māgni. Ōlim ēruditus homō ad eum vēnit artemque memoriae eum docēre voluit. “Haec,¹ inquit, “ars facere potest ut omnia² memoriā³ teneās.” Themistoclēs autem, “Magis,” inquit, “mihi tū placēbis, si mē oblivīscī multa² docueris.”

377.

CERVA ET VITIS.

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrum ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vitem sē condidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs sequentēs, longius prōgrediuntur. Cerva autem nōn iam timēns vēnātōrēs incipiēbat folia vītis carpere. Folia agitantur, quod vident vēnātōrēs et statim reveniunt. Mox sentiunt ibi bēstiam aliquam sub foliis latēre et sagittis cervam vulnerant. Brevi tempore misera bēstia vulneribus⁴ moritur, sed moriēns dicit, “Iūstās dō poenās, nam huic vītī, quae mē tegēbat, nocēre nōn dēbuī.⁵

378. 1. Once upon a time a deer, fleeing swiftly, escaped from the hunters. 2. Hiding under a vine, she nibbled the leaves. 3. But the hunters, who had gone on too far, soon came back. 4. They saw the leaves shake,⁶ and thought something was hiding there. 5. With their arrows they wounded the poor creature. 6. “My punishment is just,” says she, while dying, “for by nibbling I hurt the vine which protected⁷ me.”

¹ With *ars*.

⁵ *I ought not to have injured.*

² How are *omnia* and *multa* used? ³ See 84. ⁴ See 132.

⁶ Passive infinitive.

⁷ Express by participle of *tegō*.

379.

Vocabulary.

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however.*

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast, creature.*

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble.*

celeriter, adv. *swiftly.*

cerva, ae, f. *deer, hind.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach.*

dō (dare, etc.) poenās, *suffer punishment.*

ē-ripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus
[rapiō], *seize, snatch; sē
ēripere, escape.*

iūstus, -a, -um, *just.*

lateō, -ēre, latuī —, *lurk, lie hid.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

obliviſcor, -ī, oblitus sum, *forget.*

re-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, —, *come back, return.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *up to, under.*

vēnātor, -ōris, m. *hunter.*

vītis, -is, f. (vīti-), *vine.*

LESSON LX.

Clauses introduced by *cum, when.*

380. Learn the pluperfect subjunctive of *sum*, and of the model verbs in the active and passive.

381.

Model Sentences.

1. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, Aeduī Rōmānis amīci erant, *when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduans were friendly to the Romans.*

2. Id nōs faciēmus, cum tū domum vēneris, *we shall do this when you come (shall have come) home.*

3. Cum frūmentī cōpia in agris esset, exercitus profectus est, *when there was an abundance of grain in the fields, the army set out.*

4. Dux, cum castra mūnita essent, ad hostis properāvit, *when the camp had been fortified, the commander hastened against the enemy.*

a. Observe the mood and tenses in 1 and 2, in the cum-clause; then the same in 3 and 4.

382. Rule. — *In a cum-clause expressing time, the verb is in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.* *Es not depend on Pres. T.*

383.*Vocabulary.*

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, <i>go from, go away, go off</i> (520).	im-pudēns, -entis [in, not, pudēns, modest], bold, brazen, impudent.
ali-quandō, adv. [alius], at some time, once <i>aliquando</i> [maid.	iūssū, m. (only abl.), by order.
ancilla, -ae, f. maid-servant,	mūnus, -eris, n. duty, office.
captivus, -ī, m. captive.	post, prep. with acc., after, behind; as adv., afterwards.
ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cry out, exclaim.	quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, ask for, inquire.
hic, adv. here, hereupon.	
re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, answer, reply, respond.	

384. 1. Cum iūssi essent dicere, ūnus incēpit. 2. Militēs, cum oppidum cēpērunt, omnis incolās interfēcērunt. 3. Militēs, cum oppidum cēpissent, omnis incolās interfēcērunt. 4. Cum ei fābulam nārrārem, subitō ridēbat. 5. Imperātor nūntiō *expositivo* dūce¹ ūsus exercitum per silvās dūxit. 6. Captivus, cum iūssū imperātōris nōmen quærerētur, nihil respondit. 7. Victōri nōmen captivī quarenti, nihil est respōnsum.

385.

NASICA ET ENNIUS.

Nāsica aliquandō ad poētā² Ennium vēnit et eum quaesivit. Ei³ quarenti ancilla respondit Ennium domi nōn esse. Nāsica sēnsit illam⁴ dominī iūssū hōc dixisse

¹ As guide.³ To him, i.e., Nasica.² That is, to the house of the poet.⁴ That she. See 245, a.

et Ennium domi esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasica venisset Ennius et eum quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? ego non cognoscō," inquit, "vocem tuam?" Hic Nasica: "Homō es impudens. Ego, cum te quaererem, ancillae¹ tuae dicenti te domi non esse credidi; tū mihi ipsi non credis?"

386. 1. When Nasica came to Ennius, the latter² did not wish to see him. 2. Therefore, Ennius wished the maid to say that he was not at home, when Nasica should ask³ for him.⁴ 3. He did not fear that Nasica would not believe the maid. 4. Did the maid perform her duty in⁵ obeying her master? 5. When Nasica had asked for his friend, the poet, he went away.⁶ 6. He went away wondering.

¹ Depends on credidi (372), and has dicenti in agreement with it.

³ Plup. subjunctive.

⁴ Sē, not eum. ⁵ Omit.

⁶ abiit.

² See 100. c.



CALCEI.

LESSON LXI.

Ablative Absolute.

387.

Model Sentences.

1. Ventō fa- vente, nāvis in por- tum vēnit,	{ the wind favoring, when the wind favored, with a favoring wind, }	{ the ship came into port. }
--	---	---------------------------------------

2. Cōsul, pāce factā, Rōmam vē- nit,	{ peace having been made, when (or after) peace had been made, because peace had been made, having made peace, }	{ the consul came to Rome. }
--	---	---------------------------------------

3. Tē duce hos- tis vincēmus,	{ you (being) leader, since you are our leader, if you are our leader, under your leadership, with you for a leader, }	{ we shall defeat the enemy. }
----------------------------------	--	---

4. Augustus, Cicerōne cōsule, nātus est,	{ Cicero (being) consul, when C. was consul, in the consulship of C., }	{ Augustus was born. }
--	---	---------------------------------

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 a noun and a participle are put in the ablative to express the time, cause, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb. In 3 and 4 the participle is wanting, as the verb **sum** has no present participle. In 3 a noun and a pronoun are used; in 4, two nouns. An adjective and a noun may be used in the same way.

b. Observe that the noun or pronoun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. The words in the ablative are cut off grammatically from the rest of the sentence, hence this ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

388. Rule. — *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.*

c. Observe the various renderings of the ablative absolute. The literal translation is given first in each case, but this ought seldom or never to be done in rendering Latin into English, except to show that the construction is understood.

d. In the second sentence notice the difference between the Latin and English idioms. We may say, *the consul, having made peace, came to Rome*; but the Latin has no perfect participle corresponding to *having made*, therefore, the perfect *passive* participle must be used in the ablative with *pāce*. The same idea might be expressed by a clause with *cum*.

e. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English perfect active participle (*having made*, etc.) can be directly expressed in Latin, only when there is a deponent verb of the right meaning : *Caesar having set out, Caesar profectus*.

389.*Vocabulary.*

ā-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus	ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
[ad], recognize.	await, wait for, expect.
ante, prep. w. acc., before.	Germānus, -ī, m. a German,
Catō, -ōnis, m. Cato.	glōria, -ae, f. glory, fame,
co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum	renown.
[com], exhort, urge, encourage.	Marius, -ī, m. Marius.
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-	oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus
tus [faciō], accomplish,	[ob, caedō, cut], slay, kill.
finish.	signum, -ī, n. sign, signal,
	standard.

390. 1. Hannibal, montibus superātis,¹ in Ītaliā vēnit. 2. Hannibal, viſō frātris occisī capite, "Āgnōscō,"

¹ Having passed over.

The part. agrees with the noun.
"noun does not agree with the part."

inquit, "fōrtūnam Carthāginis." 3. Equitēs, equis incitātis, impetum fēcērunt. 4. Caesar militēs paucis vōcibus cohortātus, signum proeli dedit. 5. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. 6. Labiēnus, cum montem occupāvisset, nostrōs exspectābat. 7. Catōne mortuō, nūlla iam¹ fuit rēs pūblica. 8. Hōc oppidum, paucis dēfendentibus,² Caesar expūgnāre nōn potuit. 9. Belgae māgnā in bellō glōriā³ potītī putābant sē fēliciter dimicātūrōs. 10. Cōnsiliis eōrum cōgnītis Caesar castra mōvit, et māgnō⁴ itinere factō eōs fugāvit.

391. 1. We shall be victors under the leadership of Caesar. 2. Caesar was wont to encourage his men before a battle in a few words. 3. After hostages had been given, peace was made with the Gauls. 4. Since the war was finished, Caesar returned into Hither Gaul. 5. In the consulship of Marius the Germans were defeated in a great battle. 6. When Marius⁵ had been made consul, he defeated the Germans in a great battle. 7. The brave soldier, having performed⁶ his duty, did not fear blame.

¹ Nūlla iam = *no longer any*.

² Translate *though*, etc.

³ See 361.

⁴ *Forced*.

⁵ Latin order: *Marius, when*

he, etc.

⁶ Why not in the ablative?



PHARETRA CUM SAGITTIS.

LESSON LXII.

392. Reading Lesson.

GALLIA PACATA.

Omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius belli fāma ad barbarōs perlāta est ut ab Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrōs pollicēbantur, nam timēbant nē Caesar suam terram vāstāret. Quō^x lēgātōs Caesār, quod¹ in Ītaliā prope-rābat, initā proximā aestāte² ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, legiōnibus in hiberna ductis, in Ītaliā profectus est. His rēbus ^{causis} gestis ex litteris³ Caesaris supplicātiō diēs quīndecim dēcrēta est, quod⁴ ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

Quō is here used as an adjective.

393. 1. So great was Caesar's last victory that after the battle had been fought⁵ all the Gauls gave hostages. 2. After Further Gaul was subdued, Caesar set out for Hither Gaul, and the army returned to winter quarters. 3. When summer had begun,⁶ the deputies returned to Caesar. 4. "Have you," said he, "done those things which I ordered?" 5. They replied that they had obeyed all his orders. 6. So great was the joy at Rome on account of Caesar's victories that a thanksgiving was decreed.

¹ Not the relative.

³ On account of the despatches.

² The next summer having begun = at the beginning of the next summer; marks the time of reverti.

⁴ The relative is neuter, because it refers to a clause.

⁵ Use a form of faciō.

⁶ Express in two ways.

394.

Vocabulary.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,

decide, determine, decree.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. (pl.)

[hiems], *winter quarters*
(castra understood).

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō,

command], *order, com-*
mand.

in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —

[incola], *dwelt; inhabit.* *habito*in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go in,**begin* (520).ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pāx],

make quiet, subdue.

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,

spread abroad (521).polliceor, -ērī, -itus *sum,**promise.*

re-vertor, -ī, revertī, reversus

(deponent in pres., impf. and

fut.), *turn back, return.*supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. *thanks-**giving.*

LESSON LXIII.

Compounds of Sum.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. — DATIVE OF SERVICE.

395. Possum has been already treated in LESSON XLVII. The other compounds of *sum* are inflected like *sum*, except *prōsum*. *Prōsum* is compounded of *prōd* (old form of *prō*, *for*) and *sum*. The *d* of *prōd* is retained before *e*. See 517, 518.

396.

Model Sentences.

1. Ipse dux suis militibus aderat, *the general himself helped his soldiers.*

2. Quis equitātui praefuit? *who was in command of the cavalry?*

3. Caesar decimae legiōnis peditēs equis imposuit, *Caesar mounted the foot-soldiers of the tenth legion on horses.*

a. Observe in the model sentences illustrations of a common use of the dative. Many verbs compounded with certain prepositions are intransitive in Latin, and govern the dative. The corresponding English verbs are often transitive.

397. Rule. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, govern the dative.*

a. All the compounds of sum, except absum and possum, govern the dative.

b. The dative governed by these verbs does not depend upon the preposition in the compound, but is the indirect object of the compound verb.

398.

Model Sentences.

1. *Mīlitēs ibi erant praesidiō, the soldiers were there as a defence (for a defence).*

2. *Cuī bonō est? whose advantage is it? (to whom is it for an advantage?).*

3. *Hunc librum magister mihi praemiō dedit, this book the master gave me as a reward (for a reward).*

a. Observe that the datives *praesidiō*, *bonō* (used as a noun), and *praemiō* indicate the *end* or *purpose*, that for which something *serves*. Hence this dative is called the DATIVE OF SERVICE.

399. Rule. — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves.* 1. *Dis, mīto, venio.*

a. This dative may be accompanied by another dative, as in 2 (*cuī*), and 3 (*mihi*), of the person or thing affected, the ordinary indirect object (28).

400.

Vocabulary.

Athēniēnsis, -is, m. (Athēniēnsi-) [Athēnae], an Athenian.

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid*; plu. *auxiliaries*.

in-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, inlātus (ill-), *bring upon, cause*;

bellum inferre, *make war upon*, with dat. (521).

mōs, -ōris, m. *custom, manner*. (115)

per, prep. w. acc., *through*.

praesidium, -ī, n. *protection, defence*.

schola, -ae, f. *school*.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

ab-sum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent*, with ā or ab and abl. *not with D*
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be from, be wanting, lack, fail*.

in-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be in, be among*.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be among, be present*.

ob-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be against, injure, hinder*.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, be at the head of, command*.

prō-sum, prōdesse, -fui, -futūrus, *be for, be useful to, benefit*.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be over, be left over, survive*.

401. 1. Pater timet nē quid¹ malī filiō accidat.
2. Barbari populō Rōmānō bellum inferēbant. 3. Nōn scholae² sed vitae discimus. 4. Iste liber, quem tū mihi proficiscēti dedisti, per tōtum iter fuit mihi voluptātī. 5. Quis praefuit equitātui quem Aedui Caesarī auxiliō miserant? 6. Labiēnus, hōc locō occupātō, māgnū hostibus terrōrem intulit. 7. Pauci Graecōrum Athēniēnsibus māgnō in periculō vēnērunt auxiliō.

✓ 402.

DE AMICITIA.

In vērā amicitia māgnū inest praesidium. Amicus vērus adest amicō neque deerit in periculō. Amicō prō-

¹ See 312, note 6.

² For school.

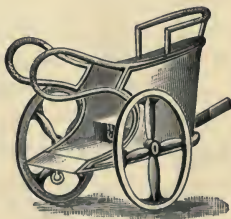
desse dulce est, amicō deesse turpe. Amicus fidus nōn aberit ab amicō in malā fōrtūnā. Mōrēs malī amicitiae obsunt. Inter hominēs malōs vēra amicitia nōn interest. Cicerō cōsul, cum rei pūblicae praeesset, amicis multum prōfuit. Multae epistulae Cicerōnis et ēius amicōrum supersunt. Prōdeste amicis. Amicis este in periculō praesidiō.

- ✓ **403.** 1. In Hannibal there was great foresight and bravery. 2. He was long absent from his own country, making war upon the Romans. 3. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 4. He was present at many battles, and was a terror¹ to the Romans. 5. He benefited his country in many ways.² 6. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 7. Scipio defeated him in battle in Africa. 8. He survived this battle many years. 9.³ His name will never lack renown.

¹ For a terror.

² Things. See 168.

³ Turn the sentence round:
renown will never be wanting.



CURRUS.

LESSON LXIV.

The Irregular Verb *eŏ*, *go*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : *eŏ*, *īre*, *ivī* (*iī*), *itūrus*.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE. — ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

404. Learn the conjugation of *eŏ*, except the perfect subjunctive, the gerund, and supine. (520.)

a. The root is *i*; observe where it is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the present participle.

405. The following prepositions, which take the ablative, have been used in preceding exercises :

ā (*ab*), *away, from; by.*

cum, *with.*

dē, *from, concerning.*

ē (*ex*), *out of, from.*

prō, *before, for.*

sine, *without.*

a. These are the common prepositions that take the ablative. Most other prepositions take the accusative; but *in* and *sub* are sometimes followed by the ablative, sometimes by the accusative.

b. *In* after verbs expressing *motion* has the meanings *into, to, towards, for, against*, and takes the accusative.

c. *In* after verbs expressing *rest* has the meanings *in, on, at*, and takes the ablative.

d. *Sub*, *under, up to*, after verbs expressing motion, takes the accusative; after verbs expressing rest, takes the ablative.

406.

Models.

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 1. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in oppidō, in the town.} \\ \text{in Ītaliā, in Italy.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnīs, at or in Athens.} \\ \text{Arpīnī, at or in Arpinum.} \\ \text{Carthāginī, at or in Carthage.} \\ \text{Rōmae, at or in Rome.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 2. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ad flūmen, to the river.} \\ \text{in urbem, into the town.} \\ \text{in Ītaliā, to or into} \\ \quad \text{Italy.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnās, to Athens.} \\ \text{Rōmam, to Rome.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 3. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ex agrīs, from the fields.} \\ \text{ex Ītaliā, from Italy.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Athēnīs, from Athens.} \\ \text{Rōmā, from Rome.} \end{array} \right.$ |

a. All the above ways of expressing place have been illustrated in preceding lessons, and are familiar to the learner, except the last (*Athēnīs*, *Rōmā*). Observe that in the first column a preposition is used in every expression of place, while in the second column (names of towns only) no preposition is used.

b. Again, observe in the first column how (1) place *where* is expressed, (2) place *whither*, (3) place *whence*, and compare, group by group, with the second column.

407. Rule for names of towns:

1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative.
2. Place *whither* is expressed by the accusative ~~without a preposition~~. *Toward*
3. Place *whence* is expressed by the ablative ~~without a preposition~~. *This is unable of Separation*

a. *Domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *the country*, have the construction of names of towns. So also names of small islands.

names of towns *with in except small islands & domus*

408.

*Paradigm.*domī, *at home.*domum, *(to) home.*domō, *from home.*rūrī, *in the country.*rūs, *to, into the country.*rūre, *from the country.*

409.

*Vocabulary.*Alpēs, -ium, f. (Alpi-), *the Alps.*arceō, -ēre, -cuī, —, *keep off.*avārus, -a, -um, *greedy, rapacious, avaricious.*careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lack, be in want of.*dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender.*ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out.*in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go in, enter on.*mēnsis, -is, m. (mēnsi-), *month.*nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [re-], *go back, return.*rēgnum, -ī, n. *kingdom, throne.*spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deprive, rob, despoil.*trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross.*vacuus, -a, -um, *destitute of.*

410. 1. Voluērunt ire Corinthum. 2. Nōlunt exīre Athēnīs. 3. Māvult redire Carthāginem. 4. In urbem ibunt. 5. Eunt Corinthō. 6. It ex urbe. 7. Iērunt domum. 8. Dixērunt sē domum itūrōs. 9. Redeunt rūs. 10. Dīcit mē rūs itūrum. 11. Timet ut eant domum.

411. 1. We shall go to Rome. 2. They will return from Gaul. 3. He crossed. 4. He says he crossed. 5. They enter. 6. He entered. 7. We are unwilling to enter. 8. Don't return to the city. 9. Remain at Carthage. 10. You were returning from the country. 11. They fear that he will return to the country.



412.

Model Sentences.

1. Hōc mē liberā periculō, *free me from this danger.*
2. Hīc homō cibō caret, *this man is in want of food.*
3. Germānī Rōmānōs ā finibus suis arcēbant, *the Germans kept the Romans off from their lands.*

a. Observe the use of the ablative to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the question from what? of what? and is called the ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. The ablative of place whence, with or without a preposition, is an ablative of separation.

413. Rule. — *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.*

- 414.** 1. Lēgātī Rōmā missī Carthāginem iērunt.
 2. Hunc ille deus ā suis ārīs arcēbit. 3. Cum Miltiadēs insulam quandam nōn posset expūgnāre, rediit Athēnās. 4. Alexander, patre mortuō, rēgnum iniit.
 5. Istā cūrā liberātus gaudēbō omnibus cum civibus.
 6. Alpēs ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trānsiit nēmō.
 7. Urbs dēfēnsōribus vacua fuit. 8. Avārī militēs ārās spoliāvērunt dōnis. 9. Helvētī ē suis finibus exīre voluērunt. 10. Duōbus itineribus domō exīre poterant.

- 415.** 1. We removed from the city into the country.
 2. When we had remained two months in the country we returned home. 3. The goddess will keep the Romans from her temple. 4. My boy, that horse lacks grain and water. 5. Cicero was born at Arpinum, in Italy.

Max. Gen. . . maybe = this man.

6. From Arpinum he removed to Rome, in which city he was educated. 7. Caesar says that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 8. My friend lacked money.

Colloquium.

T. Aliquis iānuam pulsat. *Ī,* puer, aperi iānuam.
 door knock

[*Meliboëus trīstī vultū passibus tardīs introit.*]
steps slow enter

Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste tuus vultus
 how do you do have visited
 trīstis?

M. Ēheu ! mī Tityre, abeō ē meā patriā.
go away

T. Cūr abīs? Quō abībīs? Nōlī relinquere haec arva
dulcia. fields
pleasant.

M. Quid tibi vis? Meos agros militibus impiis donavit
what would you have me do wicked give
Octavianus. Magna pars gregum interiit. Ipse periit.
flocks have perished, am undone

T. Minimē, amice ; adi ad Octāviānum ; ille est benignus, neque vult tē perire. Tū agrōs recipiēs.

M. Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; tamen ibō, ut tū
monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.

T. Et redibis in agrōs tuos; redibit pāx aurea. Valē,
mī Meliboeē, es bonō animō.
be of good courage

M. Et tū valē, bone Tityre.

LESSON LXV.

Sequence of Tenses. — Indirect Questions.

417. Learn the perfect subjunctive of the model and irregular verbs, except *ferō* and *fiō*.

418.

Model Sentences.

1. *Audiō ubi sit* — *ubi fuerit*, *I hear where he is* — *where he has been*, or *was*.

2. *Audiam ubi sit* — *ubi fuerit*, *I shall hear where he is* — *where he has been*, or *was*.

3. *Audiverō ubi sit* — *ubi fuerit*, *I shall have heard where he is* — *where he has been*, or *was*.

4. *Audiēbam ubi esset* — *ubi fuisset*, *I was hearing where he was* — *where he had been*.

5. *Adivi ubi esset* — *ubi fuisset*, *I heard where he was* — *where he had been*.

6. *Adiveram ubi esset* — *ubi fuisset*, *I had heard where he was* — *where he had been*.

a. The tenses of the indicative mood are grouped in two classes. (1) Those of the first group above, the present, future, and future perfect, are called *primary tenses*. (2) Those of the second group, the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect, are called *secondary tenses*. Observe now the tenses of the subjunctive: in the first group the present and perfect; in the second group the imperfect and pluperfect.

419. Rule. — *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

a. The principle of the sequence of tenses has been already partially illustrated in preceding lessons.

420. *Model Sentences.*

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Quis es? <i>who are you?</i> | Sciō quis sis, <i>I know who you are.</i> |
| 2. Ubi erāmus? <i>where were we?</i> | Sciēbam ubi essēmus, <i>I knew where we were.</i> |
| 3. Cūr profectus est? <i>why did he set out?</i> | Quaesiērunt cūr profectus esset, <i>they asked why he had set out.</i> |
| 4. Quem vidisti? <i>whom have you seen?</i> | Sciō quem videris, <i>I know whom you have seen.</i> |

a. Compare each of the sentences in the left-hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right-hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **INDIRECT QUESTIONS**. Observe the mood and how it is translated.

421. Rule. — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

a. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis**, *who?* **cūr**, *why?* **num**, *whether?* **ubi**, *where?* **quō**, *whither?* **unde**, *whence?* **quot**, *how many?*

b. **Num** in a direct question expects the answer *no*, as **nōne** expects the answer *yes*. It must commonly be left untranslated: **num manibus ambulās?** *do you walk on your hands?* or, *you don't walk on your hands, do you?* In an indirect question **num** means *whether*, without definite expectation.

422.

Vocabulary.

cachinnō, -āre, —, —, inter-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
laugh out loud. ask, inquire, question.

dolor, -ōris, m. pain, grief. num, adv., whether. 421, b.

inferi, -ōrum, m. (pl. of in- *quot, indecl. how many?*

terus), inhabitants of the stultus, -a, -um, foolish.

lower world. tot, indecl. so many. cf. tam-som

unde, adv. whence, where from.

interrogō, ask a question, inquire, and nearly limited to that
sense; followed by the accusative of the person.

quaerō, ask a question, ask for; also, seek to gain, seek to
know, search into; followed by the ablative of the person
with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).

423. 1. Unde veniēbant tot militēs? 2. Amicus ā
 mē quaesivit unde venirent tot militēs. 3. Ille puer
 parentibus nōn voluptātī,¹ sed semper erit dolōri. 4. Dic
 mihi num Alexander ā proeliis semper abierit victor.
 5. Flūmen ab urbe abest octō milia passuum. 6. Quot
 civitātēs sunt in armis? 7. Caesar quaesivit quot civi-
 tātēs essent in armis. 8. Magister interrogāvit quis
 esset inferōrum deus. 9. Hic² quīdam puer stultissimus
 cachinnābat. 10. Labiēnus militēs cohortātus prōgressus
 est ut vidēret quō in locō barbari flūmen trānsirent.
 11. Equitātus Caesarī auxiliō missus, bellō cōfectō,
 domum revertit. 12. Num templū spoliāsse profuit
 principibus avāris quī exercituī praefuerunt?

424. 1. Tell me what you have in your right hand.
 2. Nasica asked a man whether he had been accustomed
 to walk on his hands. 3. Do you know why he thus
 questioned him? 4. Because his hands were like horn.

¹ See 399.

² Hercupon, adv.

1. told it himself the leaders to have

5. We know why he is laughing aloud, why he has been wanting. 6. Do you not wonder why we have been praised? 7. They wondered whether he had been admonished. 8. Caesar asks the captives how many of the enemy there are.

LESSON LXVI.

The Irregular Verbs *ferō* and *fīō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, endure.*
 fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.

425. Learn the conjugation of *ferō* and *fīō*, omitting the gerund and supine (521, 520).

a. Observe in the compounds of *ferō*, as they occur, the change that many prepositions undergo: *ab* + *ferō* becomes *auferō*; *ex* + *ferō*, becomes *efferō*, etc.

b. *Fīō* is the passive of *faciō*. The *i* is long, except in *fit*, and when followed by *er*.

426.

Vocabulary.

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead off, abduct.

ad-ferō (aff-), -ferre, attulī
(adt), adlātus (all-), bear
to, bring.

apud, prep. w. acc., with,
among.

au-ferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablā-
tus [ab(s)], bear off, carry
away.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], a fall-
ing, chance, misfortune,
loss.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, conlātūs
° (coll-), [com] bring together,
collect.

ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus
[ex], bear out, carry forth.

ferōx, -ōcis, fierce, savage.

labor, -ōris, m. labor, toil.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change.
patienter, adv. patiently.

Plūtō, -ōnis, m. Pluto, god of
the lower world.

Prōserpina, -ae, f. Proserpine,
daughter of Ceres.

427. 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fit, fiunt. 3. Ferre, fieri. 4. Auferet, auferētur. 5. Contulerant, conlāti erant. 6. Abstulī, abstulērunt. 7. Fimus, fiet. 8. Tulisse, factus esse. 9. Efferunt, ēlāti sunt. 10. Dicunt sē auxilium adlātūrōs esse. 11. Hae puellae fiunt diligentiōrēs illis pueris. 12. Eis labor fiet voluptāti.

428. 1. They become consuls. 2. They are bearing arms. 3. He will carry away money. 4. He says he has carried away money. 5. We have brought together corn. 6. Bring shields for defense. 7. Take care¹ to become good. 8. He took care to become good.

429. 1. Ferte patienter labōrēs. 2. Ferte patienter quae mūtārī nōn possunt. 3. Nōlite cupere id quod fieri nōn potest. 4. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 5. Cum imperātor auxilium militibus dēfessis attulit, omnēs gāvīsī sunt. 6. Auxiliō ab imperātore militibus dēfessis adlātō, omnēs gaudēbant. 7. Frūmentō in ūnum locum conlātō ūsus est Caesar. 8. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolis fiēbant cōsulēs. 9. "Benignum rēgem," inquit deūs, "nōn tulistis, nunc ferōcem ferte." 10. Interrogāvit quot ex civibus factī essent militēs et num multi proeliō interessent et superessent.

430. 1. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 2. They bore with patience that which they could not change. 3. The inhabitants carried their all² with them out of the town. 4. The soldiers carried away all the booty from the captured town. 5. Who will³ cross yonder river with me? 6. He asks who will cross yonder

¹ Fac ut. See 312, note 8.² Omnia sua.³ Is willing.

river with him? 7. Tell me why Pluto led off Proserpine.
 8. He led her off that she might become his wife.* 9. I
 know not where¹ so many birds come from.¹ 10. Keep
 them off from my vines, so that they may not do harm.

* wife is in no

431.

Colloquium.

SOCRATES ET RHADAMANTHUS.

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.
unless I am mistaken

S. Rēctē dicis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt,
as say
 Sōphroniscī.

R. Cūr dicis ut ferunt? Nōnne rē vērā es filius illius?
in truth

S. Ipse quidem nēsciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūius sim
indeed not know am
 filius.

R. Num mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē
mock beware
 sapientem dixit ōrāculum?
oracle

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse
yes understand
 inscium perspicīō.
ignorant see plainly

R. Quō modo aetātem dēgistī?
how pass

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte
for the most part I used to talk especially
 quaerēbam.
inquired.

R. Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve
 tempus tibi aurēs praebebō.

S. Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istīus rei sum inscius, nam
alas
 mihi explicāre poterat nēmō.
was able no one

¹ Where . . . from = unde.

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At
quid hōc locō tibi est in animō facere? ^{seem} ^{but}

S. Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et
^{seem good} ^{I should like}
Ulixē et aliis clārissimis Graeciae principibus loquī.
^{to talk.}

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.
^{be off} ^{then} ^{shades}

LESSON LXVII.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

CUM CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE.

432.

Model Sentences.

1. Gallī lēgātōs misērunt qui pācem peterent, *the Gauls sent deputies to sue for (who should sue for) peace.* *Relative Clause*

2. Quis est tam ineptus qui hōc crēdat? *who is so silly as to believe (who believes) this?* *Rel. Relative Clause*

3. Nihil est quod tē dēlectāre possit, *there is nothing that can delight you.*

4. Ō quanta vis vērītātis, quae sē dēfendat! *O how great the power of truth which (since it) defends itself!*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that the relative clause has precisely the same meaning as if *ut* were used in place of *qui*. In 1 the clause is one of *purpose*, in 2, of *result*.

b. Observe in 3 that the relative clause *characterizes* the antecedent. In such cases the antecedent is usually *indefinite* or *general*.

c. Observe in 4 that the relative clause denotes *cause* or *reason*, *quae* being equivalent to *cum ea*.

433. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.*

434. *Model Sentences.*

1. Cum amicī adsint, gaudēmus, *since our friends are here, we rejoice.*

2. Cum fortiter pūgnārent, tamen nōn vicērunt, *though they fought bravely, still they did not conquer.*

a. Notice these two uses of cum. In 1 it denotes *cause* or *reason* (*as, since*), in 2, *concession* (*though, although*).

435. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with cum causal or concessive.* — *Always Subj.*

436. *Vocabulary.*

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad, causa], *blame, accuse.*

ad-eō, adv. *to that degree, so.*

arduus, -a, -um, *steep; difficult, arduous.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, gain, reach.*

cum, conj. *when, while; as, since; though, although.*

currus, -ūs, m. *chariot, wagon.*

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [causa], *excuse.*

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *taste.*

vehō, -ēre, vēxi, vēctus, *carry, draw. Pass. ride.*

i-gnōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in, not (g)nō(scō)], *know not, be ignorant.*

mors, mortis, f. (morti-) [moriōr], *death.*
per-mittō, -ēre, -misi, -missus, *allow, permit.*

petō, -ere, -ivi (-iī), -itus, *seek, ask, sue for.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus [sub, teneō], *hold up, sustain, withstand.*

437. 1. Mārcus erat prūdēns, quī vinum nōn gustāret.

2. Cum ignōrem quis sit ille homō, eī nōn permittam ut —

A causal clause is not a

condition clause + it is a result

mēcum in eōdem currū vehātur. 3. Magister puerum graviter accūsāvit quī pēnsō nōn fungerētur. 4. Quae cum ita sint,¹ supplicātiō dēcernētur. 5. Neque repertus est quisquam eōrum quī² morī prō princīpe recūsāret. 6. Nōn is³ sum quī² mortis periculō terrear. 7. Caesar, aciē instrūctā, equitātum misit quī hostium impetum sustinēret. 8. Nihil est nobīs adeō arduum quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possimus. 9. Cum ea ita sint, tamen⁴ vōbiscum pācem faciam. 10. Lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis⁵ cōsiliō⁶ excūsārent. 11. Ennius erat impudēns quī sē nōn esse domī dīceret.

Several of the following sentences may be translated in two ways.

438. 1. No one is so wise that he knows all things. 2. Who can be found who does not enjoy the light of the sun? 3. Since I cannot persuade you⁷ to go,⁸ I will go myself. 4. The soldier was vehemently accused because he would not fight. 5. A thanksgiving was decreed for Caesar¹¹ because he had waged war successfully in Gaul. 6. Although this is so, still we do not fear that you will taste the wine. 7. You are not the person⁹ to abuse the patience of your friends. 8. There were some¹⁰ who thought that Caesar was in Italy.

¹ Quae cum ita sint, *since this (these things) is so.*

² The antecedent implies some word like *such, such as to.*

³ *The person.*

⁴ Tamen indicates the meaning of cum.

⁵ *On a former occasion.*

⁶ *Conduct.*

⁷ See 372.

⁸ Ut with subjunctive.

⁹ Cf. 437, 6.

¹⁰ Omit.

¹¹ *Dat. Case.*

LESSON LXVIII.

The Subjunctive in Wishes and Appeals.

439. Learn the future imperative of the model and irregular verbs.

440. Model Sentences.

WISHES.

1. (Utinam) pater mox adsit,	<div> <div>may father be here (come) soon!</div> <div>I hope father may be here (come) soon!</div> <div>oh, that father may be here (come) soon!</div> </div>
2. Utinam pater nunc adesset,	<div> <div>would that father were here now!</div> <div>I wish father were here now!</div> <div>oh, that father were here now!</div> </div>
3. Utinam pater heri adfuisset,	<div> <div>would that father had been here yesterday!</div> <div>I wish father had been here yesterday!</div> <div>oh, that father had been here yesterday!</div> </div>

441. Rule. — Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without *utinam*, *oh that*!

a. *Utinam* is often omitted with the present, rarely with other tenses. The negative in wishes is *nē*, not *nōn*.

b. Observe the tenses in the model sentences. In which one does the tense indicate that the wish may be realized?

442. Rule. — 1. *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present subjunctive.*

2. *Wishes referring to the present are expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.*

3. *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive.*

c. The subjunctive in wishes is called the OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, from *optō*, *wish*.

443. In appeals and commands both imperative and subjunctive forms are used, as illustrated in the following paradigm :

444.

APPEALS AND COMMANDS.

Paradigm.

POSITIVE.	NEGATIVE.
moneam, <i>let me advise.</i>	nē moneam, <i>let me not advise.</i>
monē, } <i>advise. thou</i>	nōlī monēre, } <i>do not advise.</i>
moneās, }	nē monueris, } <i>Perf.</i>
moneat, } <i>let him advise, or</i>	nē moneat, } <i>let him not, or</i>
monuerit, } <i>he shall advise.</i>	nē monuerit, } <i>he shall not, advise.</i>
moneāmus, <i>let us advise.</i>	nē moneāmus, } <i>let us not advise.</i>
monēte, <i>advise.</i>	nōlite monēre, <i>do not advise.</i>
moneant, } <i>let them advise,</i>	nē moneant, } <i>let them not,</i>
monuerint, } <i>or they shall advise.</i>	nē monuerint, } <i>or they shall not, advise.</i>

a. In the subjunctive of appeals and commands two points should be noticed : (1) the negative is *nē*, as in wishes ;

(2) the perfect subjunctive does not differ in meaning from the present.

b. The common form of negative appeal or command in the second person is *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the infinitive.

445.

Vocabulary.

<i>ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, walk,</i>	<i>prae-clārus, -a, -um, very</i>
<i>take a walk.</i>	<i>splendid, glorious.</i>
<i>beātus, -a, -um, happy.</i>	<i>sic, adv. so, thus.</i>
<i>colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, care</i>	<i>stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand.</i>
<i>for, till, cultivate; honor.</i>	<i>sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go under,</i>
<i>in-columis, -e, unharmed,</i>	<i>go up to.</i>
<i>safe. tutus, tutus, tutum</i>	<i>tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus,</i>
<i>numquam, adv. never.</i>	<i>touch.</i>
<i>per-fruor, -ī, -frūctus sum,</i>	<i>testūdō, -inis, f. covering to</i>
<i>enjoy fully, enjoy.</i>	<i>protect besiegers, testudo.</i>
<i>tranquillus, -a, -um, quiet, peaceful, tranquil.</i>	

446. 1. Valeant, valeant civēs mei; sint incolumēs, sint beātī! 2. Stet haec urbs praeclāra, mihique patria cārissima! 3. Tranquillā rē publicā mei civēs perfruantur! 4. Utinam Rōmānī virōrum fortium cōpiam habērent! 5. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē, Catilīna, istā cūrā liberārent. 6. Utinam Catilīna omnis sēcum suōs ex urbe ēdūxisset! 7. Militēs, testūdine factā, urbis mūrū subīerunt. 8. Colitōte parentēs, lēgibus pārētōte, amātōte amicōs. 9. Nē miles mortis periculum timeat. 10. Cāsus tristis Prōserpinae erat māgnō dolōrī mātī, quae hōc dixit: “Eheu, miserrima Prōserpina, utinam numquam ē domō exiissēs! Iam per sex mēnsēs cūiusque annī nōn eris apud mē. Sic Iuppiter dēcrēvit. Tum redeās ē rēgnō tristī quō tē Plūtō ferōx rēx ille abstulit.”

447. 1. Let us send a messenger to Caesar to warn him not to set out. 2. Touch not wine ; let us not touch wine ; they shall not touch wine. 3. Let us go forth out of the city and carry our all¹ with us. 4. The boy wrote often to his father what he had done. 5. Would that my brother were living, and that he were at the head of the army ! 6. Oh, take a walk with me in the fields to-day ! 7. Would that I had taken a walk with you in the fields yesterday !



LESSON LXIX.

Conditional Sentences.

448. Sentences consisting of two clauses—a condition introduced by *sī*, *if*, or *nisi*, *if not*, *unless*, and a conclusion—are called *Conditional Sentences*.

449. *Model Sentences.*

I. PRESENT AND PAST TIME.

A. NOTHING IMPLIED.

1. *Sī hōc facit, bene est, if he is doing this, it is well.*
2. *Sī hōc faciēbat, bene erat, if he was doing this, it was well.*
3. *Sī hōc fēcit, bene fuit, if he did this, it was well.*

a. By “nothing implied” is meant that there is nothing in the form of the condition to indicate whether what is supposed is true or not.

¹ See 430, note 2.

450. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses.*

B. CONTRARY IMPLIED.

4. **Sī hōc faceret, bene esset,** *if he were doing this, it would be well.*

5. **Sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset,** *if he had done this, it would have been well.*

b. In the first sentence the time denoted is the present. Evidently the time would be the same, if **nunc**, *now*, were inserted.

c. By "contrary implied" is meant that the form of the condition indicates that what is supposed is not true.

451. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

II. FUTURE TIME.

C. MORE VIVID (PROBABLE).

1. **Sī hōc faciet, bene erit,** *if he does (= shall do) this, it will be well.*

2. **Sī hōc fēcerit, bene erit,** *if he does (= shall have done) this, it will be well.*

D. LESS VIVID (POSSIBLE).

3. **Sī hōc faciat, bene sit,** *if he should do this, it would be well.*

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 the future and the future perfect are translated by the present. The form of 2, that is, the

future perfect, may be used when the supposed future act must be finished before the conclusion can follow: *sī vicerit, victoriæ corōnam recipiet*, *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will receive the crown of victory*. Note the form of translation of the less vivid condition.

452. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

453.*Vocabulary.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiō], receive, accept.	mīrābilis, -e [mīror], wonderful, strange.
calceus, -ī, m. shoe (p. 152).	ni-si, conj. if not, unless.
Cincinnātus, -ī, m. Cincinnatus.	prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put forward, propose, offer, proclaim.
classis, -is, f. (classi-), fleet.	prōpositum, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], proposal, offer.
creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūs, choose, appoint, create.	talentum, -ī, n. talent, a sum of money (§1132).
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō], dictator.	tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, endure, tolerate.
dis-pertiō; -īre, -ivī (-iī), -ītus [partiō, divide], divide, share. [again.	vestimentum, -ī, n. [vestiō], clothing; vesture.
iterum, adv. a second time,	
Milō, -ōnis, m. Milo.	

454. 1. Dux iubet, mīles pāret; sī nōn pāret, poenam dat. 2. Sī salūtī patriæ prōfueris, tibi ipsī prōderis. 3. Utinam frāter meus viveret et classi iterum praeesset! 4. Cum eō diē Milō in senātū fuisset, domum vēnit, vestimenta et calceōs mūtāvit. 5. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar iussisset. 6. Ā Rōmānis, sī urbs māgnō in peri-

culō erat, dictātōrēs creābantur. 7. Cincinnātus ab arātrō vocātus est quī esset dictātor. 8. Cum hostis fugāvisset Rōmamque periculō liberāset,¹ domum revertit.

455.

ALEXANDER ET PARMENIO.

Dārēus, Persārum rēx, decem milia talentōrum Alexandrō dare voluit, si Asiam sēcum dispertire volēbat. Alexander autem eī respondit, "Nisi orbis terrārum duōs sōlēs tolerāre potest, duōs rēgēs Asia nōn tolerābit." Parmeniō, quī ūnus ex amicis Alexandrī erat, Dārēi prōpositō audītō, "Ego," inquit, "si Alexander essem, hōc prōpositum acciperem." Cuī Alexander: "Et ego, si Parmeniō essem, acciperem."

456. 1. If Alexander should conquer Asia, would it endure two kings? 2. If he conquers Asia, will it endure two kings? 3. If the world does not endure² two suns, neither doth Asia endure two kings. 4. It is said that Darius wanted to share Asia with Alexander. 5. "If," said the former³ to the latter, "you are willing to share Asia with me, I will give you ten thousand talents." 6. "By no means,"⁴ replied Alexander; "if you had offered me⁵ twenty thousand talents, I would not have accepted." 7. If the story is true, is it not passing strange⁶? 8. Would Asia have long endured two masters, if the offer of Darius had been accepted?

¹ See 337, *b*.

³ See 100, *c*.

⁵ Not accusative.

² See 449.

⁴ Minimē.

⁶ Māximē mirābilis.



LESSON LXX.

Reading Lesson.

PROSERPINA.

*"Proserpin gathering flowers,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world."*

457. Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in agrīs flōrēs carpēbat, sorta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Subitō terrā concussā Plūtō, inferōrum deus, cūius currum equī ātrī vehēbant ē terrā ēmersit. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et inferōrum rēgina esset; clāmōrem puellae compressit. Māter cum ignōrāret, ubi filia esset, tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

458. Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōnspicit, audiuit quis filiam abdūxisset. Itaque statim iter ad Iovem flēxit et precibus animō ēius persuāsit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitterētur. Prōserpinae permissum est, ut per partem annī apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud inferōs esset.

459. 1. Who of you can tell by whom Proserpine was carried off? 2. She was carried away by Pluto, god of the Infernals. 3. The god bore her off, as she was plucking flowers in the plain of Henna. 4. Her mother did not know whither her daughter had gone. 5. So she wandered through the whole world to find her. 6. When she had heard that her daughter was queen of the Infernals, she turned her course at once to Jupiter.

7. He would have permitted her to return, if she had not tasted food. 8. Poor Proserpine, remain forever among the Infernals !

460.

Vocabulary.

āter, -tra, -trum, *black.*

atque [ad, *in addition*], and
also, and.

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
sus [premō], *press together ;*
check, suppress.

con-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus
[com, quatiō], *shake vio-*
lently.

con-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spec-
tus [com, speciō, *look*], *look*
at attentively ; observe, see,
behold.

ē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *arise,*
come forth ; emerge.

flectō, -ere, flēxī, flēxus, *bend,*
turn.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum
est, *impers., it is permitted,*
(one) may.

ludō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *play.*

nectō, -ere, nexuī and nexī,
nexus, *bind, weave.*

per-agrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus
[ager], *wander through,*
pass over.

[prex], *precis, f. (used mostly*
in plu.), prayer, entreaty.

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,
send back.

serta, -ōrum, n. [sero, *plait*],
garlands, wreaths of flowers.

tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so*
far), *at length, finally.*



VEXILLUM.

LESSON LXXI.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

DATIVE OF AGENT.

461. Learn the future active participle and the gerundive of the model and irregular verbs.

462. The First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum** :

IND. PRES. **Amātūrus sum**, *I am about to (going to, intending to) love.*

IND. IMP. **Amātūrus eram**, *I was about to (going to, intending to), love.*

463. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Quisquam dubitat quid virtūte perfectūrus sit**, *does any one doubt what he will accomplish by his valor?*

2. **Sciēbam quid factūrus essēs**, *I knew what you were going to do.*

a. From the above sentences it appears that the first periphrastic conjugation supplies a future for the subjunctive.

464. The Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive (future passive participle) with the verb **sum** :

IND. PRES. **Amandus sum**, *I am to be (ought to be, deserve to be, must be) loved.*

IND. IMP. **Amandus eram**, *I was to be (deserved to be, ought to have been) loved.*

465.

Model Sentences.

1. *Dēlenda est Carthāgō, Carthage must be destroyed.*
2. *Caesari omnia erant agenda, everything had to be done by Caesar.*
3. *Mihi scribendum est, I must write (the duty of writing is to me).*
4. *Omnibus moriendum est, all must die (the necessity of dying is to all).*

a. Observe that in the second periphrastic conjugation *necessity, duty, or obligation* is implied in the gerundive.

b. Notice the impersonal use of the verbs in 3 and 4. By *impersonal* is meant *having no personal subject*.

c. Observe in 2, 3, and 4 that the *person* (Caesari, mihi, omnibus) is expressed by the dative. This dative is called the DATIVE OF AGENT.

466. Rule. — *The gerundive with sum takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do.*

467.

Vocabulary.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, <i>drive, lead; do, act.</i>	moenia, -ium, n. pl. [mūniō], <i>walls (of a city).</i>
cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, <i>think, be of the opinion.</i>	opus, -eris, n. <i>work, labor.</i>
dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus (<i>stand off</i>), <i>cease, desist.</i>	pertinācia, -ae, f. <i>perseverance, obstinacy, pertinacity.</i>
iam-iam, adv. <i>already.</i>	re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>call back, recall; revoke.</i>
vēxillum, -ī, n. <i>signal-flag</i> , p. 183.	

468. 1. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 2. Scribenda est mihi epistula. 3. Scribenda erat tibi epistula. 4. Cum Scipiō, graviter vulnerātus, in hostium manūs iamiam

ventūrus¹ esset, filius eum periculō liberāvit. 5. Māgnam in spem veniēbat fore² ut pertināciā dēsisteret hostis. 6. Hōc cēseō et Carthāginem esse dēlendā. 7. Ita nōbīs vivendū est ut ad mortem parātī simus. 8. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum prōpōnendū,³ signum tubā dandū,³ ab opere revocandī⁴ militēs, aciēs instruenda,³ militēs cohortandī.⁴

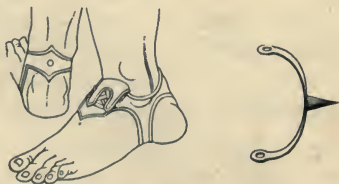
469. 1. Do you know what he is going to do? 2. We ought to cultivate virtue. 3. Since you are intending to go away, we must follow you. 4. If we wish to conquer, we must undergo all dangers patiently. 5. Let us form a testudo and go up to the walls of the city. 6. If Proserpine had not been carried off, her mother would not have wandered over all the earth. 7. Oh that Proserpine had not been carried off by Pluto to be his wife ! 8. Oh that Jupiter had not permitted his brother to come out of the earth !

¹ Iamiam ventūrus, *just about to come.*

² For futūrum esse ; *that it would be, i.e., result.*

³ Supply erat.

⁴ Supply erant.



CALCAR.

LESSON LXXII.

Gerund and Gerundive. — Supine.

470. Learn the gerunds and supines of the model and irregular verbs.

471. The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. It is declined like the singular of **dōnum**, the nominative and the accusative without a preposition being supplied by the infinitive.

472. *Model Sentences.*

1. N. **Vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing*.
2. G. **Caesar hortandī finem facit**, *Caesar makes an end of exhorting*.
3. D. **Aqua ūtilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking*.
4. AC. { **Hic locus ad pūgnandum idōneus est**, *this place is suitable for fighting*.
Dīcunt vidēre esse crēdere, *they say that seeing is believing*.
5. AB. **Mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is strengthened by learning*.

473. The use of the gerundive as a passive participle with **sum** has been illustrated in the preceding lesson. But it may also be used as a verbal adjective.

474.

Model Sentences.

1. G. **Cōnsilia** ineunt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{urbem dēlendī,} \\ \text{urbis dēlendae,} \end{array} \right\}$ *they are forming plans for (of) destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed).*

2. D. **Operam** dat agrīs colendīs, *he devotes himself to tilling the fields (to the fields to be tilled).*

3. AC. **Vēnērunt** ad pācem petendam, *they came to seek peace (for peace to be sought).*

4. AB. **Occupātus** sum in litterīs scribendīs, *I am engaged in writing letters (in letters to be written).*

a. Notice that in the first sentence the gerund **dēlendī** limits **cōnsilia** in accordance with 36; but as a *verbal* noun it governs the same case that any other form of the verb **dēleō** would take, namely the accusative. What case would **ūtendī**, from **ūtor**, govern? What **pārendī**, from **pāreō**?

b. Study the equivalent construction **urbis dēlendae**. Here **urbis** depends on **cōnsilia** and the gerundive, like any other adjective, agrees with its noun.

c. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad** denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

475.

Model Sentences.

1. **Lēgātī Rōmam** veniunt pācem petītum, *ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*

2. **Id perfacile est factū**, *that is very easy to do, or to be done.*

a. Observe in the first example that the supine **petītum** has the same meaning as **ut petant**, **quī petant**, or **ad petendam**; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

476. Rule. — *The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

b. In the second example the supine in ū answers the question *in what respect?* *Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

c. The supine in ū is really an *ablative of specification.* See 168.

477. Vocabulary.

at, conj. <i>but.</i>	male [malus], adv. <i>badly, ill.</i>
causa, -ae, f. <i>cause, reason;</i>	male-ficus, -ī, m. [faciō], <i>evil-doer.</i>
abl., <i>for the sake</i> (following a genitive).	praeter, prep. w. acc., <i>besides.</i>
con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com], <i>come together, assemble.</i>	propter, prep. w. acc., <i>on account of.</i>
[even.	solum, adv. [sōlus], <i>only.</i>
etiam, conj. [et, iam], <i>also,</i>	sūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, <i>take.</i>
im-perītus, -a, -um [in], <i>unskilled;</i> w. gen.	tēlum, -ī, n. <i>weapon.</i>
in-ermis, -e [arma], <i>unarmed.</i>	tubicen, -inis, m. [tuba, canō, <i>sing</i>], <i>trumpeter.</i>

478. 1. Multī convēnērunt studiō¹ videndae novae urbis. 2. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā² Galli mittunt. 3. Galli ad Caesarem vēnērunt pācem petitum. 4. Si lēgāti veniant quī pācem petant, Caesar patienter eōs audiat. 5. Inter³ pūgnandum trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt. 6. Quod optimum est factū faciam. 7. Cincinnātus, quī esset⁴ vir belli⁵ perītissimus, dictātor dē exercitū liberandō creātus est. 8. Tubicen, cum ipse nōn pūgnāret, tamen aliōs ad pūgnam incitābat.

¹ See 132.

³ *During.*

² Notice this way of expressing purpose.

⁴ See 433.

⁵ *In war.*

9. Hostēs putāvērunt tubicinem, quī aliōs ad pūgnam incitāret,¹ pūniendum esse. 10. Utinam tubicen nē captus esset !

479.

TUBICEN.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus est. “Cūr mē,” inquit, “interficitis? nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.” At hostēs, “Propter hōc ipsum,” inquirunt, “tē interficiēmus quod, ipse pūgnandī imperitus,² aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs.” Nōn solum malefici sunt pūniendī, sed etiam eī quī aliōs ad male faciendum incitent.

480. 1. The trumpeter asked the enemy's commander why he was going to put him to death. 2. “During the fight,”³ said he, “I did not use any⁴ weapon. 3. I could not have⁵ killed any one⁶ with this trumpet. 4. Do not put me to death. 5. I am not the man⁷ who deserves to be punished. 6. If I had been fighting, I would not say a word.”⁸ 7. But the general said, “That trumpet of yours is a weapon which incites⁹ the soldiers to fight. You must die.” 8. Then the trumpeter, about to die,¹⁰ said, “O that I had not incited others to evil doing.”

¹ See 433.⁶ A form of *quisquam*.² *Though unskilled.*⁷ Cf. 437, 6.³ Cf. 478, 5.⁸ *Would say nothing.*⁴ See p. 124, note 7.⁹ Subjunctive of characteristic (433).⁵ *Could not have* = *was not able to.*¹⁰ *moritūrus.*



ROMANUS IN TOGA PRAETEXTA.

READING LESSONS.

For Vocabularies see page 239.

Fables.

481.

MULIER ET GALLINA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae eī¹ cottidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam² aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod³ in aliis gallinīs reperiri solet. Itaque dum māiōribus divitiis inhiat,⁴ etiam minōrēs⁵ 5 perdidit.

482.

VULPES ET UVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōspicāta¹ ad illam subsiluit omnium viriū suārum contentiōne, si² eam fōrte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēs, “At nunc etiam,” inquit, “acerbae³ sunt, nec eās in viā repertās⁴ tollerem.” 5

481. ¹ *For her.*

⁴ See page 87, note 1.

² Illam = illam gallinam, and is subject accusative of cēlāre.

⁵ Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

³ Quod = id quod.

482. ¹ Perfect participle agreeing with vulpēs. Translate by the present participle.

³ The plural, as if ūvae had been used.

² *To see if.*

⁴ Eās repertās, *them found* = *if I had found them.* See 353, c.

483.

RUSTICUS ET CANIS FIDELIS.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, quī in cūnis iacēbat, reliquit canī¹ fidēli atque validō custōdiendum. Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum extinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus
 5 acūtis, et, dum eum necāre studet,² cūnās simul ēvertit super extinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret, irā accenditur.³ Temerē igitur custōdem filioli interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās
 10 restituit,⁴ super anguem occīsum⁵ repperit puerum vivum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris⁶ sēra⁷ fuit.

484.

PUER MENDAX.

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,¹ atque per iocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lūpus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque² lūpum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē ēlūsōs³ ā puerō vidē-
 5 runt. Deinde⁴ cum ipse⁵ lūpus aggrederētur, et puer

483. ¹ Dative of agent, **466.** Translate *left for his . . . dog to guard.* What literally?

² See page 87, note 1.

³ Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

⁴ Translate as if it were restituerat; after ubi, ut, and post-

484. ¹ The imperfect denoting customary action; render, *used to tend.*

² *But . . . not.*

quam, meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

⁵ See **353**, c (2).

⁶ *For the deed.* Why not dative? **36.**

⁷ *Too late.*

⁸ See page 133, note 1.

⁴ Pronounced *de-in'-de.*

⁵ *Really.*

rē vērā⁶ implōrāret auxilium, nēmō gregi⁷ subvēnit, et ovēs lupi praeda⁸ sunt factae. Mendāci hominī nōn crēdimus, etiam cum vērā⁹ dicit.

485.

SENEX ET MORS.

Senex quidam ligna in silvā ceciderat, et, fasce in umerōs sublātō,¹ domum redire coepit. Cum fatigātus esset² et onere et itinere, dēposuit ligna, et, senectūtis³ et inopiae³ miseriās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malis⁴ liberāret. Mox adest⁵ mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus: "Prō! hunc lignōrum fascem quaesō umeris⁶ meis impōnās."⁷

486.

VULPES ET LEO.

Vulpēs numquam leōnem viderat. Cum huic¹ fōrte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur² formīdine. Eundem cōspicāta est iterum. Tum extimuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut antea. Cum tertiō³ leōni obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,⁴ ut auderet² accēdere propius et conloquī cum eō.

⁶ Rē vērā = *in earnest*.

⁷ Why dative? See 397.

485. ¹ From tollō.

² See 382.

³ Notice the order; the genitives coming first are made emphatic.

⁴ See 413.

486. ¹ For the dative see 397.

² Is this a subjunctive of purpose or of result?

⁸ Predicate nominative.

⁹ True (things) = the truth.

⁵ See page 87, note 1.

⁶ Umeris . . . impōnās; cf. nōbīs . . . imposuit in 313.

⁷ Quaesō . . . impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās.

⁸ The third time.

⁴ Adeō . . . fuit, to such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened.

Stories from Roman History.

487.

HORATII ET CURIATII.

Tullō Hostiliō rēgnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum est.¹ Ducibus Hostiliō et Fūfetiō placuit, paucōrum certāmine fāta² utriusque populi dēcernī. Erant apud Rōmānōs trigeminī frātrēs Horātii,
 5 trēs apud Albānōs Cūriatīi. Cum eis agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā quisque³ patriā dimicent ferrō. Foedus ictum est eā lēge, ut, unde victōria,⁴ ibi imperium esset.

Ictō foedere trigeminī arma capiunt, et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque duo
 10 exercitūs. Datur sīgnum, infestisque armīs ternī iuvenēs, māgnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs,⁵ concurrunt. Ut⁶ primō concursū increpuēre⁷ arma, micantēsque fulsēre⁷ gladii, horror ingēns spectantēs perstringit. Cōnsertis deinde manibus, statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium⁸
 15 expirantēs cecidērunt;⁹ trēs Albānī vulnerātī.¹⁰ Ad cāsum Rōmānōrum conclāmāvit gaudiō exercitus Albānus. Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. Ūnum

487. ¹ Exortum est = incēpit.

² Subject-accusative of dēcernī; *that the destinies . . . should be decided.*

³ Notice the order, suā quisque, which is constant in these words.

⁴ Unde victōria . . . esset, *on whichever side the victory should be, there should be the power.*

⁵ Gerentēs = habentēs; but gerentēs is a nobler expression.

⁶ Ut followed by the indicative means *when* or *as*.

⁷ Notice the form of the perfect.

They first hurled their spears, which rang against the shields; then they drew their swords and rushed into close combat.

⁸ See 292, a. Alter super alterum would be better. Why?

⁹ From cadō.

¹⁰ Supply sunt.

Horātium trēs Cūriātii circumsteterant. Fōrte is integer¹¹ fuit, sed quia tribus impār erat, ut distraheret hostēs, fugam capessivit, singulōs¹² per intervālla secū- 20 tūrōs esse ratus.¹³ Iam aliquantum spatī¹⁴ ex eō locō, ubi pūgnātum est,¹⁵ aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum ē Cūriātiis haud procul ab sēsē abesse. In eum māgnō impetū redit, et dum Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiis, ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius eum occiderat. 25 Alterum¹⁶ deinde, priusquam tertius posset cōsequi, interfēcit.

Iam singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec viribus parēs. Alter erat intāctus ferrō et geminātā victōriā ferōx;¹⁷ alter fessum¹⁸ vulnere, fessum cursū trahēbat corpus. 30 Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns male sustentem¹⁹ arma Cūriātium cōficit, iacentem²⁰ spoliāt. Rōmānī ovantēs āc grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt et domum dēdūcunt.

488.

CINCINNATUS. 458 B.C.

T. Quīctius Cincinnātus omnium cōnsēnsū dictātor¹ est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim

¹¹ Integer = incolumis.

¹² Subject-accusative of secūtūrōs esse; *thinking that they would follow one by one.*

¹³ Ratus = putāns. Perfect participles must sometimes be rendered as if they were present participles.

¹⁴ See 203.

¹⁵ See page 109, note 4.

¹⁶ *The second.* ¹⁷ *Emboldened.*

¹⁸ Agrees with corpus.

¹⁹ Take the words in this order: Cūriātium male sustentem arma cōficit. On sustentem see 353, c (2).

²⁰ Supply et to precede, and render, *as he lay dead.*

488. ¹ A magistrate appointed in times of extraordinary danger to hold office six months, and in-

vested with supreme power. On this occasion the Aequi, enemies of the Romans, had surrounded

tunc quattuor iūgerū² colēbat agrum. Ad quem missi
lēgātī nūdum³ eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte⁴ datā
5 redditāque Quīntius togam⁵ properē ē tuguriō prōferre
uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus
audiret.

Postquam, abstersō pulvere āc sūdōre, togā indūtus⁶
prōcessit⁷ Quīntius, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs
10 cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit,⁸ expōnunt.
Quīntius igitur Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus lictōri-
bus domum dēductus est. Posterō diē ab urbe profectus,
exercitū Rōmānō liberātō, victōs hostēs sub iugum⁹ mīsit.
Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ducti ante currum
15 hostium ducēs, militāria signa¹⁰ praelāta; secūtus est
exercitus praedā onustus; epulae instrūctae sunt ante
omnium domōs. Quīntius sextō decimō diē dictātūrā,
quam in¹¹ sex mēnsēs accēperat, sē abdicāvit et ad
bovēs¹² rediit triumphālis agricola.

489.

GAIUS DUILIUS. 260 B.C.

C. Duilius Poenōs nāvālī proeliō primus¹ dēvicit. Qui
cum² vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicis vėlōcitate superārī,

the whole Roman army com-
manded by the consul.

² Contracted genitive plural,
depending on agrum.

³ That is, without his toga.
See illustration, page 34.

⁴ Salūte datā redditāque,
freely rendered, *after exchanging*
greetings. What literally?

⁵ See illustration, page 191.

⁶ Indūtus = vestītus.

489. ¹ Was the first to.

⁷ See 483, note 4.

⁸ Quantus . . . sit, an indirect
question depending on expōnunt.

⁹ A yoke of spears⁹ formed by
two upright spears with another
laid upon them transversely.
Sending under the yoke was
symbolical of defeat and humil-
iation.

¹⁰ See illustrations, page 105.

¹¹ For. ¹² From bōs.

² Quī cum, when he.

manūs ferreās, quās corvōs vocāvēre,³ māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem excōgitāvit. Ea māchina Rōmānis māgnō ūsui fuit; nam 5 iniectis illis corvis hostilem nāvem apprehendēbant,⁴ deinde superiectō pōnte in eam insiliēbant et gladiō velut in pūgnā terrestri dimicābant; unde Rōmānis, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Inter pūgnandum trigintā hostium nāvēs captae sunt, mersae tredecim. 10 Duilius victor Rōmam reversus, primus⁵ nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānis grātiōr fuit, quod invicti terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum possent.⁶ Itaque Duiliō concessum est,⁷ ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tibicine ā cēnā rediret. 15

490. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO, PUER. 85 B.C.

M. Porcius Catō iam puer¹ invictum animi rōbur ostendit. Cum² in domō Drūsī avunculi sui ēducārētur, Latīni dē civitatē impetrandā³ Rōmam vēnērunt. Popēdius, Latinōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latinōs apud avunculum adiuvāret. Catō 5 vultū cōstanti negāvit⁴ id sē factūrum. Iterum deinde āc saepius⁵ interpellātus in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc

³ Note this form of the perfect and compare increpuere, 487.

⁴ *Iniectis . . . apprehendēbant.*
By throwing these grappling-hooks upon a hostile ship they would catch hold of it.

490. ¹ *Already a boy* = even in boyhood. ² *While.*

³ *Respecting citizenship to be obtained* = to obtain citizenship.

⁵ See note 1.

⁶ *They could very much = could accomplish a great deal.*

⁷ See p. 109, note 4. *Duilius was allowed.*

⁴ *Denied himself to be going to do it* = refused to do it.

⁵ *Again and again.*

Popēdius puerum in excelsam⁶ aedium partem levātum tenuit,⁷ et sē⁸ abiectūrum inde minātus est, nisi precibus
 10 obtemperāret; neque hōc metū⁹ ā sententiā eum potuit dīmovēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse fertur: “Grātulēmur nōbīs, Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum; sī enim senātor esset,¹⁰ nē spērāre quidem iūs civitātis licēret.”¹⁰

491.

GAIUS MARIUS. 88 B.C.

Marius¹ hostēs persequentēs fugiēns aliquamdiū in palūde dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus extractusque, ut erat² nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum lōrō Minturnās raptus³ et in custōdiam cōniectus est.
 5 Mīssus est ad eum occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne⁴ Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterrui. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vīdisset, “Tūne,⁵ homō,” inquit, “C. Marium audēbis occīdere?” Quō auditō attonitus ille ac tremēns abiectō ferrō fūgit,

⁶ Excelsam = altam.

⁷ Puerum . . . levātum tenuit, held the raised up boy = raised up and held the boy. See 353, c (3).

⁸ The subject-accusative of abiectūrum (esse). Eum, referring to puerum, must be supplied as the object of abiec-

tūrum. He threatened himself to be going to throw him (eum) down from there = he threatened to throw him down from there.

⁹ By this fear means by fear of this.

¹⁰ What time is denoted, and what is implied? See 451.

491. ¹ Marius had been driven from Rome by his powerful rival, Sulla, and was fleeing for life.

² Just as he was.

³ The following et shows that est must be supplied.

⁴ See 168.

⁵ The -ne is the interrogative particle.

Marium⁶ sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius de- 10
inde ab iis, quī prius eum occidere voluerant, ē carcere
ēmissus est.

492.

GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR. 44 B.C.

Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsiden-
tem¹ coniūrātī speciē offici circumstetērunt ilicōque ūnus,
quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit, renuentīque²
ab³ utrōque umerō togam apprehendit. Deinde clāman-
tem,⁴ “Ista⁵ quidem vīs est,” Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātis, 5
adversum vulnerat paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae
bracchium adreptum⁶ graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prō-
silire aliō vulnere tardātus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum,
quem fili locō habēbat, in sē inruentem vidisset, dixisse
fertur: “Tū quoque, mī fili!” Dein ut⁷ animadvertit, 10
undique sē⁸ strictis pūgiōnibus peti,⁸ togā caput ob-
volvī⁹ et ita tribus et vīginti plāgis cōnfossus est.

⁶ Marium . . . clāmitāns.
Translate in this order: clāmi-
tāns sē nōn posse occidere Ma-

rium. Marius is put first for em-
phasis. The most emphatic word
in a sentence is put first. See 33.

492. ¹ That is, eum (C) adsiden-
tem, following circumstetērunt.

² Renuentī = recūsantī. Sup-
ply ēī. One, to him (viz. Caesar)
refusing, seizes the toga = on
Caesar's refusal, one seizes his
toga.

⁸ Not from here, but on.

⁴ Agrees with Caesarem under-
stood, object of vulnerat.

⁵ This (that you are doing).
See 304, f.

⁶ See 353, c (3).

⁷ See 487, note 6.

⁸ Himself to be attacked = that
he was being attacked.

⁹ “ . . . then burst his mighty heart ;
And, in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statua,
Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell.”

493. CAESAR OCTAVIANUS AUGUSTUS. 63 B.C. to 14 A.D.

Fōrmā¹ fuit Augustus eximiā et per omnēs aetātis gradūs venustissimā. Erat tamen omnis lēnōcini neglegēns et in capite cōmendō² tam incūriōsus, ut eō ipsō tempore, quō³ illud tōnsōribus committeret, aut legeret aliquid aut
5 etiam scriberet.

Paucis annis antequam morerētur, gravissimam in Germāniā⁴ accēpit clādem, tribus legiōnibus cum duce Vārō lēgātisque et auxiliis omnibus caesis. Hāc nūtiātā excubiās per urbem⁵ indixit, nē quis tumultus existeret, et
10 māgnōs lūdōs Iovī optimō māximō vōvit, si rēs pūblica in meliōrem statum vertisset. Adeō dēnique cōsternātum⁶ ferunt,⁷ ut, per continuōs mēnsēs barbā capillōque submissō, caput interdum foribus inlideret, vōciferāns, “Quīntili Vāre, legiōnēs redde!” diemque clādīs quo-
15 tannīs maestum habuerit ac lūgubrem.

Tandem adflictā valētūdine in Campāniam concessit, ubi, remissō ad ōtium animō, nūllō hilaritātis genere abstinuit. Suprēmō vitae diē petitō speculō capillum sibi cōmī iussit et amicōs circumstantēs percontātus,
20 ecquid⁸ eis vidērētur mīnum vitae commodē trānsēgissee,

493. ¹ What other case might have been used? See **140**.

² For the construction compare **474**, 4.

³ Supply *tempore* and translate *when*.

⁴ Marks the place of *clādem*. Augustus was not himself in Germany.

⁵ *Urbs* often used alone of *Rome*.

⁶ The Latin fully expressed would be, *eum cōsternātum esse*, accusative with infinitive depending on *ferunt*.

⁷ *Ferunt* = *dicunt*. Cf. *fertur* = *dicitur*, **492**, line 10.

⁸ *Whether he had played the comedy of life fairly well.*

adiēcit solitam clausulam,⁹ “Ēdite strepitum vōsque omnēs cum gaudiō applaudite.” Obiit Nōlae sextum et septuāgēsimum annum agēns.

⁹ In the Roman theatres it was usual for an actor, at the close of a comedy, to invite the applause of the audience.



primary tenses of 1st indicative mode

pres.

fut.

fut. per.

primary tenses of Subj. mode

pres.

per.

secondary tenses of 2nd Mode

2nd imp.

per.

plu. per.

secondary tenses of Subj.

2nd imp.

plu. per.

primary tenses of Subj. go with
primary of 2nd.

secondary with secondary

TABLES

OF

DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

NOUNS.

494. First Declension. — ^υĀ-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. tuba, <i>a trumpet.</i>	tubae, <i>trumpets.</i>
G. tubae, <i>of a trumpet.</i>	tubārum, <i>of trumpets.</i>
D. tubae, <i>to or for a trumpet.</i>	tubīs, <i>to or for trumpets.</i>
AC. tubam, <i>a trumpet.</i>	tubās, <i>trumpets.</i>
AB. tubā, <i>with a trumpet.</i>	tubīs, <i>with trumpets.</i>

495. Second Declension. — ^υŌ-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. hortus	hortī	dōnum	dōna
G. hortī	hortōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
D. hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs
AC. hortum	hortōs	dōnum	dōna
AB. hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension has a special form in -e: horte.

	SING.	PLU.		SING.	PLU.		SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puerī		ager	agrī		vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum		agrī	agrōrum		virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs		agrō	agrīs		virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs		agrum	agrōs		virum	virōs
AB.	puerō	puerīs		agrō	agrīs		virō	virīs

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	filius	filiī		cōnsilium	cōnsilia
G.	fili, -iī	filiōrum		cōnsili, -iī	cōnsiliōrum
D.	filiō	filiīs		cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs
Ac.	filium	filiōs		cōnsilium	cōnsilia
AB.	filiō	filiīs		cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs

a. The vocative singular of *filius* is *fili*.

496.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

	SINGULAR.			
N.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
AB.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

	PLURAL.			
N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
AB.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

SINGULAR.

N. pēs	lapis	virtūs
G. pedis	lapidis	virtūtis
D. pedi	lapidī	virtūtī
Ac. pedem	lapidem	virtutem
Ab. pede	lapide	virtute

PLURAL.

N. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
G. pedum	lapidum	virtutum
D. pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtutibus
Ac. pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
Ab. pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtutibus

Liquid Stems.

SINGULAR.

N. cōsul	pater	vīctor	homō
G. cōsulis	patris	vīctoris	hominis
D. cōsulī	patri	vīctorī	hominī
Ac. cōsulem	patrem	vīctorem	hominem
Ab. cōsule	patre	vīctore	homine

PLURAL.

N. cōsulēs	patrēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
G. cōsulum	patrum	vīctorum	hominum
D. cōsu'libus	patribus	vīctoribus	homi'nibus
Ac. cōsulēs	patrēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
Ab. cōsu'libus	patribus	vīctoribus	homi'nibus

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
G. vulneris	vulnerum	corporis	corporum
D. vulnerī	vulne'ribus	corporī	corpo'ribus
Ac. vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
Ab. vulnere	vulne'ribus	corpore	corpo'ribus

Stems in i.

SINGULAR.

N. ignis	hostis	nūbēs	mare
G. ignis	hostis	nūbis	maris
D. ignī	hostī	nūbī	marī
Ac. ignem	hostem	nūbem	mare
AB. ignī, -e	hoste	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

N. ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs	maria
G. ignium	hostium	nūbium	—
D. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus
Ac. ignīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	maria
AB. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
G. animālis	animālium	calcāris	calcārium
D. animālī	animālībus	calcārī	calcārībus
Ac. animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
AB. animālī	animālībus	calcārī	calcārībus

SINGULAR.

N. cliēs	urbs	arx	nox
G. clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D. clientī	urbī	arcī	noctī
Ac. clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
AB. cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

PLURAL.

N. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G. clientium	urbium	arcium	noctium
D. clientibus	urbībus	arcibus	noctibus
Ac. clientīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
AB. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

497. Fourth Declension. — *Ū*-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G. gradūs	graduum	cornūs	cornuum
D. graduī, -ū	gradibus	cornū,	cornibus
AC. gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
AB. gradū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

498. Fifth Declension. — *E*-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
AC. diem	diēs	rem	rēs
AB. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

499. Special Paradigms.

SINGULAR.			
N. deus	domus	senex	vīs
G. deī	domūs, -ī (loc.)	senis	vīs ¹
D. deō	domuī, -ō	senī	vī ¹
AC. deum	domum	senem	vim
AB. deō	domō, -ū	sene	vī
PLURAL.			
N. deī, diī, dī	domūs	senēs	vīrēs
G. deōrum, deūm	domuum, -ōrum	senum	vīrium
D. deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus
AC. deōs	domōs, -ūs	senēs	vīrēs
AB. deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus

¹ The genitive and dative singular are rare.

SINGULAR.

N. iter	Iuppiter	bōs	nix
G. itineris	lovis	bovis	nivis
D. itinerī	lovī	bovī	nivī
AC. iter	Iovem	bovem	nivem
AB. itinere	Iove	bove	nive

PLURAL.

N. itinera	—	bovēs	nivēs
G. itinerum	—	bovum, boum	nivium
D. itineribus	—	bōbus, būbus	nivibus
AC. itinera	—	bovēs	nivēs
AB. itineribus	—	bōbus, būbus	nivibus



ADJECTIVES.

500. First and Second Declensions.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
AC. bonum	bonam	bonum
AB. bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
AC. bonōs	bonās	bona
AB. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. liber	libera	liberum
G. liberī	liberae	liberī
D. liberō	liberae	liberō
AC. liberum	liberam	liberum
AB. liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL.

N. liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
AC. liberōs	liberās	libera
AB. liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

SINGULAR.

N. aeger	aegra	aegrum
G. aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
D. aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
AC. aegrum	aegram	aegrum
AB. aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.

N. aegrī	aegrae	aegra
G. aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
D. aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
AC. aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
AB. aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

501.

Third Declension.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G. audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D. audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
AC. audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
AB. audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. prūdēns	prūdēns	prudentēs	prudentia
G. prūdentis	prūdentis	prudentium	prudentium
D. prūdentī	prūdentī	prudentibus	prudentibus
AC. prudentem	prūdēns	prudentīs, -ēs	prudentia
AB. prūdentī, -e	prūdentī, -e	prudentibus	prudentibus

N. brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
G. brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
D. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
AC. brevem	breve	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
AB. brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
AC. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
AB. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

502. Irregular Adjectives.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
G. aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
D. aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
AC. alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
AB. aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
AC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
AB.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
AC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
AB.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

503. Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	altior	altiōrēs	altiōra
G.	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D.	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
AC.	altiōrem	altiōrīs, -ēs	altiōra
AB.	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus
N.	—	plūrēs	plūra
G.	—	plūrium	plūrium
D.	—	plūribus	plūribus
AC.	—	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
AB.	—	plūribus	plūribus

504. Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i> .	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i> .	exterior, <i>outer</i> , exterior.	extrēmus } <i>outermost</i> , extimus } <i>last</i> .
īferus, <i>below</i> .	īferior, <i>lower</i> .	īnimus } <i>lowest</i> . īmus }
posterus, <i>following</i> .	posterior, <i>later</i> .	postrēmus } <i>last</i> . postumus }
superus, <i>above</i> .	superior, <i>higher</i> .	suprēmus } <i>highest</i> . summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> .]	citerior, <i>hither</i> .	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i> .]	interior, <i>inner</i> .	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
[prae, prō, <i>before</i> .]	prior, <i>former</i> .	primus, <i>first</i> .
[prope, <i>near</i> .]	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus, <i>next</i> .
[ūltrā, <i>beyond</i> .]	ūterior, <i>further</i> .	ūltimus, <i>furthest</i> .
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> .	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus -a, -um, <i>much</i> . }	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i> . }		
parvus, -a, um, <i>small</i> .	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senēx, senis, <i>old</i> .	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i> .	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i> .	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

24. + 10 living in Dec. = 34.

505.

Numerals.

CARDINALS.

ORDINALS.

1. ūnus, -a, -um <i>one</i>	✓ primus, -a, -um <i>first</i>
2. duo, duae, duo <i>two</i>	✓ secundus (or alter) <i>second</i>
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim, or sexdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimū decimus
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, or ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus prīmus, or ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo, or duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus, or alter et vīcēsīmus
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsīmus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus

CARDINALS.

Latin & like plural of numbers.

80.	octōgintā
90.	nōnāgintā
100.	centum
101.	{centum ūnus, <i>or</i> centum et ūnus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a
300.	trecentī
400.	quadringentī
500.	quīngentī
600.	sēscentī, <i>or</i> sexcentī
700.	septingentī
800.	octingentī
900.	nōngentī
1,000.	mīlle <i>-adj.</i>
2,000.	duo mīlia <i>-num. noun</i>
100,000.	centum mīlia

ORDINALS.

octōgēsimus
nōnāgēsimus
centēsimus
{centēsimus prīmus, <i>or</i> centēsimus et prīmus
ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadringentēsimus
quīngentēsimus
sēscentēsimus
septingentēsimus
octingentēsimus
nōngentēsimus
mīllēsimus
bis mīllēsimus
centiēs mīllēsimus



PRONOUNS.

506.

Personal.

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
G.	mei	nostrū, -trī	tui	vestrū, -trī	sui	sui
D.	mīhi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē	
AB.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē	

507.

Demonstrative.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D. huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac. hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
AB. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

N. ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G. illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
Ac. illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
AB. illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

N. is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G. ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
AB. eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

N. iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G. istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D. istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac. istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
AB. istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. idem	e'adem	idem	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eidem} \\ \text{iidem} \end{array} \right.$	eaedem	e'adem
G. eius'dem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eidem	eidem	eidem	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eis'dem} \\ \text{iis'dem} \end{array} \right.$	eisdem	eisdem
AC. eun'dem	eandem	idem	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'ādem
AB. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eisdem} \\ \text{iisdem} \end{array} \right.$	eisdem	eisdem
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
AC. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
AB. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

508.

Relative.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
AC. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
AB. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

509.

Interrogative.

N. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
AC. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
AB. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

510.

Indefinite.

SINGULAR.

N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G. alicū'ius	alicūius	alicūius
D. alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
AC. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
AB. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N. aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
AC. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
AB. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR.

N. quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G. cūius'dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D. cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
AC. quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
AB. quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

N. quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G. quōrun'dam	quārundam	quōrundam
D. quibus'dam	quibusdam	quibusdam
AC. quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
AB. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS.

511. First Conjugation. — Ā-Verbs.

amō, love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō amāmus

amor

amāmur

amās amātis

amāris, or -re

amāminī

amat amant

amātur

amantur

IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam amābāmus

amābar

amābāmur

amābās amābātis

amābāris, or -re

amābāminī

amābat amābant

amābātur

amābantur

FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō amābimus

amābor

amābimur

amābis amābitis

amāberis, or -re

amābiminī

amābit amābunt

amābitur

amābuntur

PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī amāvimus

amāvistī amāvistis

amāvit amāvērunt, or -re

amātus

amātus

amātus

{ sum

{ es

{ est

{ sumus

{ amātī

{ estis

{ sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved, etc.

amāveram	amāverāmus
amāverās	amāverātis
amāverat	amāverant

I had been loved, etc.

amātus	{	eram	amātī	{	erāmus
		erās			erātis
		erat			erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc.

amāverō	amāverimus
amāveris	amāveritis
amāverit	amāverint

I shall have been loved, etc.

amātus	{	erō	amātī	{	erimus
		eris			eritis
		erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, or -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, or -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	{	sim	amātī	{	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis			sīs			sītis
amāverit	amāverint			sit			sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	{	essem	amātī	{	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis			essēs			essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent			esset			essent

drops a of stem

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2 amā, love thou.

2 amāte, love ye.

2 amāre, be thou loved.

2 amāmini, be ye-loved.

FUTURE.

amātō, thou shalt love.

amātō, he shall love.

amātōte, you shall love.

amantō, they shall love.

amātor, thou shalt be loved.

amātor, he shall be loved.

amantor, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, to love.

amārī, to be loved.

PERF. amāvisse, to have loved.

amātus esse, to have been loved.

FUT. amātūrus esse, to be
about to love.amātum irī, to be about to be
loved.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, loving.

PRES. ———

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, about
to love.GER.¹ amandus, -a, -um, to be
loved.

PERF. ———

PERF. amātus, -a, um, loved,
having been loved.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. ———

—————

G. amandī, of loving.

—————

D. amandō, for loving.

—————

AC. amandum, loving.

AC. amātum, to love.

AB. amandō, by loving.

AB. amātū, to love, to be loved.

¹ Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle*.

512. Second Conjugation. — **Ē-Verbs.**moneō, *advise.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus. *active**pass. = moneor, moneri, monitus sum*
INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

moneō monēmus
monēs monētis
monet monent

moneor monēmur
monēris, or -re monēmini
monētur monentur

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam monēbāmus
monēbās monēbātis
monēbat monēbant

monēbar monēbāmur
monēbāris, or -re monēbāmini
monēbātur monēbantur

FUTURE.

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō monēbimus
monēbis monēbitis
monēbit monēbunt

monēbor monēbimur
monēberis, or -re monēbimini
monēbitur monēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have advised, I advised, etc. I have been (was) advised, etc.

monuī monuimus
monuisti monuistis
monuit monuerunt, or -re

monitus { sum
 es moniti { sumus
 est estis
 sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram monuerāmus
monuerās monuerātis
monuerat monuerant

monitus { eram moniti { erāmus
 erās erātis
 erat erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have advised, etc. I shall have been advised, etc.

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	erō	moniti	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

keeps E of stem

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, or -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, or -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	sim	moniti	simus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sitis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēm	monitus	essem	moniti	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

monē, advise thou.	monēre, be thou advised.
monēte, advise ye.	monēmini, be ye advised.

FUTURE.

Pass

monētō, thou shalt advise.	monētor, thou shalt be adv'd.
monētō, he shall advise.	monētor, he shall be advised.
monētōte, you shall advise.	
monento, they shall advise.	monentor, they shall be adv'd.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, to advise.	monērī, to be advised.
PERF. monuisse, to have advised.	monitus esse, to have been advised.
FUT. monitūrus esse, to be about to advise.	monitum irī, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>stem + ns</i> PRES. monēns, -entis, advising.	PRES. _____
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise.	GER. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised.
PERF. _____	PERF. monitus, -a, um, advised, having been advised.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. _____	_____
G. monendī, of advising.	_____
D. monendō, for advising.	_____
AC. monendum, advising.	AC. monitum, to advise.
AB. monendō, by advising.	AB. monitū, to advise, to be advised.

513. Third Conjugation.—E-Verbs.

regō, rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.
= omitted in Pass.
Pass = regor, regor, rectus sum.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>of stem is broken.</i> <i>I rule, etc.</i>		PRESENT. <i>I am ruled, etc.</i>	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris, or -re	regimini
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.**I was ruled, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris, or -re	regēbāmini
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris, or -re	regēmini
reget	regent	regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled, etc.*

rēxī	rēximus	rēctus	{	sum	rēctī	{	sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis			es			estis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or -re			est			sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus	{	eram	rēctī	{	erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis			erās			erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant			erat			erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus	{	erō	rēctī	{	erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis			eris			eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint			erit			erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, or -re	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus {	sim	rēcti {	simus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sīs		sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus {	essem	rēcti {	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, <i>rule thou.</i>	regere, <i>be thou ruled.</i>
regite, <i>rule ye.</i>	regimini, <i>be ye ruled.</i>

FUTURE.

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule.</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled.</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule.</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled.</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule.</i>	_____
reguntō, <i>they shall rule.</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, <i>to rule.</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled.</i>	rēctus esse, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
FUT. rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, <i>ruling.</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule.</i>	GER. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled.</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled.</i>

This is formed from last forms in p

	GERUND.		SUPINE.
N.	_____		_____
G.	regendī, <i>of ruling.</i>		_____
D.	regendō, <i>for ruling.</i>		_____
AC.	regendum, <i>ruling.</i>	AC.	rēctum, <i>to rule.</i>
AB.	regendō, <i>by ruling.</i>	AB.	rēctū, <i>to rule, to be ruled.</i>

514. Third Conjugation. — Verbs in -iō. *Have*

capiō, *take.*

i. before pers.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

capio, capi, captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

I take, etc.

I am taken.

capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis , or -re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was taking, etc.

I was taken, etc.

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, or -re	capiēbāmini
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris, or -re	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT.

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.

captus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

capient

capit erunt.

SURJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris, *or* -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, *or* -re, -erētur

PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sis, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, <i>take thou.</i>	capere, <i>be thou taken.</i>
capite, <i>take ye.</i>	capimini, <i>be ye taken.</i>
FUT. capitō, <i>thou shalt take,</i> etc.	capitor, <i>thou shalt be taken,</i> etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, <i>to take.</i>	capī, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF. cēpisse, <i>to have taken.</i>	captus esse, <i>to have been taken.</i>
FUT. captūrus esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to take.</i>	captum iri, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>taken.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

✓ PRES. capiēns, -ientis, <i>taking.</i>	PRES. —————
FUT. captūrus, <i>about to take.</i>	GER. capiendus, <i>to be taken.</i>
PERF. —————	PERF. captus, <i>having been taken.</i>

GERUND.

G. capiendī, *of taking,*
etc.

SUPINE.

AC. captum, *to take.*
AB. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

Fourth Conjug Verbs are *ir* & *er*

515. Fourth Conjugation. — $\bar{\text{I}}$ -Verbs.

almost like capio.
audiō, hear.

audiō, *hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.

audior, audire, audivi, auditus sum.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

I hear, etc.

I am heard, etc.

audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

audior	audimur
audiris, <i>or -re</i>	audimini
auditur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, etc.

I was heard, etc.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, <i>or</i> -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall hear, etc.

I shall be heard, etc.

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, <i>or</i> -re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

I have heard, etc. •

I have been heard, etc.

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, <i>or-re</i>

audītus { sum
 { es
 { est

audītī { sumus
 { estis
 { sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	{ eram erās erat	audītī	{ erāmus erātis erant
audīverās	audīverātis				
audīverat	audīverant				

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	{ erō eris erit	audītī	{ erimus eritis erunt
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, or -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, or -re	audirēmini
audīret	audīrent	audirētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	{ sim sis sit	audītī	{ simus sitis sint
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	{ essem essēs esset	audītī	{ essēmus essētis essent
audīvisēs	audīvisētis				
audīvisset	audīvissent				

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*audīte, *hear ye.*audire, *be thou heard.*audimini, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*audītō, *he shall hear.*audītōte, *ye shall hear.*audiuntō, *they shall hear.*auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*auditor, *he shall be heard.*audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audire, *to hear.*PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*audiri, *to be heard.*auditus esse, *to have been heard.*auditum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

PERF. ———

PRES. ———

GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

GERUND.

N. ———

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*D. audiendō, *for hearing.*AC. audiendum, *hearing.*AB. audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

———

———

———

AC. auditum, *to hear.*AB. auditū, *to hear, to be heard.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

516.

Sum (STEMS *es*, *fu*), *be*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

*Singular.**sum*, *I am.**es*, *thou art.**est*, *he (she, it) is.**Plural.**sumus*, *we are.**estis*, *you are.**sunt*, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.**erās*, *thou wast.**erat*, *he was.**erāmus*, *we were.**erātis*, *you were.**erant*, *they were.*

FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.**eris*, *thou wilt be.**erit*, *he will be.**erimus*, *we shall be.**eritis*, *you will be.**erunt*, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, was.**fuistī*, *thou hast been, wast.**fuit*, *he has been, was.**fuimus*, *we have been, were.**fuistis*, *you have been, were.*

{	<i>fuērunt</i> , or
	<i>fuēre</i> , <i>they have been, were.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.**fuerās*, *thou hadst been.**fuerat*, *he had been.**fuerāmus*, *we had been.**fuerātis*, *you had been.**fuerant*, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.**fueris*, *thou wilt have been.**fuerit*, *he will have been.**fuerimus*, *we shall have been.**fueritis*, *you will have been.**fuerint*, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
sim	simus	essem	essēmus
sis	sitis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>
FUTURE.	
estō, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
estō, <i>he shall be.</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

- / PRES. esse, *to be.*
 / PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*
 FUT. futūrus esse, *to be futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.*
 about to be.

517. possum, posse, potui, —, *be able, can.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus	<i>add personal endings to P. verbs</i>	
PERF.	potui	potuimus		
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuierim	potuerimus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus	potuissēmus	potuissēmus

INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse *but* PERF. potuisse

Retain d before e.

518. prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, *benefit.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
PRES.	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prosīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfui	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte,

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

519. volō, velle, volui, —, *be willing, will, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, *be unwilling, will not.*
mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	maluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissē	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.		
PRES. _____	nōlī	_____
	nōlite	
FUT. _____	nōlitō , etc.	_____

INFINITIVE.		
PRES. velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF. voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.		
PRES. volēns	nōlēns	_____

520. **eō**, **īre**, **īvi** (īi), **itūrus**, *go*.

fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum** (supplies passive to **faciō**, *make*),
be made, become.

INDICATIVE.			
PRES. eō	īmus	fiō	fimus
īs	ītis	fis	fītis
it	eunt	fit	fiunt

INDICATIVE.		
IMP. ībam	fiēbam	
FUT. ībō	fiam	
PERF. īi	factus sum	
PLUP. ieram	factus eram	
F. P. ierō	factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eam	fiam
IMPER.	irem	fierem
PERF.	ierim	factus sim
PLUP.	iissem	factus essem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ī	īte	fī	fite
FUT. itō	itōte	—	—
itō	euntō	—	—

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īre	fieri
PERF.	iisse	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īri

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	iēns, Gen. euntis	PRES. —
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	GER. faciendus
PERF.	—	PERF. factus

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N.	—	—
G.	eundi	—
D.	eundo	—
AC.	eundum	AC. itum
AB.	eundo	AB. itū

521. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus: bear, carry, endure.

feror, fert, latus sum.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, or -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	fer ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	fertō fertōte	fertor	
	fertō feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	_____
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	_____	PERF.	lātus

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N.	_____	_____
G.	ferendī	_____
D.	ferendō	_____
AC.	ferendum	AC. lātum
AB.	ferendō	AB. lātū

RULES OF SYNTAX.

N. B. — These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number following a rule is its section number.

1. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.* 22.

2. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.* 65.

3. *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.* 37.

4. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.* 45.

5. *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.* 36.

6. *The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.* 203.

7. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.* 53.

8. *A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.* 298.

9. *The indirect object is put in the dative.* 28.

10. *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., forms of the verb sum (516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject. 29.*

11. *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative. 372.*

12. *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, govern the dative. 397.*

13. *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves. 399.*

14. *The gerundive with sum takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do. 466.*

15. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. 23.*

16. *Names of towns used to express place whither are put in the accusative without a preposition. 269.*

17. *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative. 260.*

18. *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with a or ab. 76.*

19. *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. 84.*

20. *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative, usually with cum; but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.* 93.

21. *The ablative is used to express cause.* 132.

22. *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.* 140.

23. *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.* 155.

24. *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote in what respect a thing is true.* 168.

25. *The comparative is followed by the ablative when quam (than) is omitted.* 194.

26. *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.* 210.

27. *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.* 241.

28. ¹Ūtor, ²fr̄uor, ³fungor, ⁴potior, ⁵v̄escor, and their compounds, govern the ablative. 361.

29. *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.* 388.

30. *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.* 413.

31. NAMES OF TOWNS: (1) *Place where is expressed by the locative.* 407. See 180.

(2) *Place whither is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.* 407. See 269.

(3) *Place whence is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.* 407.

32. *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.* 113.

33. *The subjunctive is used with ut and nē to express purpose.* 254.

34. *The subjunctive is used with ut and ut nōn to express result* 278.

35. *In a cum-clause expressing time, the verb is in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.* 382.

36. *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.* 421.

37. *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.* 433.

38. *The subjunctive is used with cum causal or concessive.* 435.

39. *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without utinam, (oh that!)* 441.

40. *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present subjunctive.* 442.

41. *Wishes referring to the present are expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.* 442.

42. *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive. 442.*

43. *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses. 450.*

44. *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time. 451.*

45. *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses. 452.*

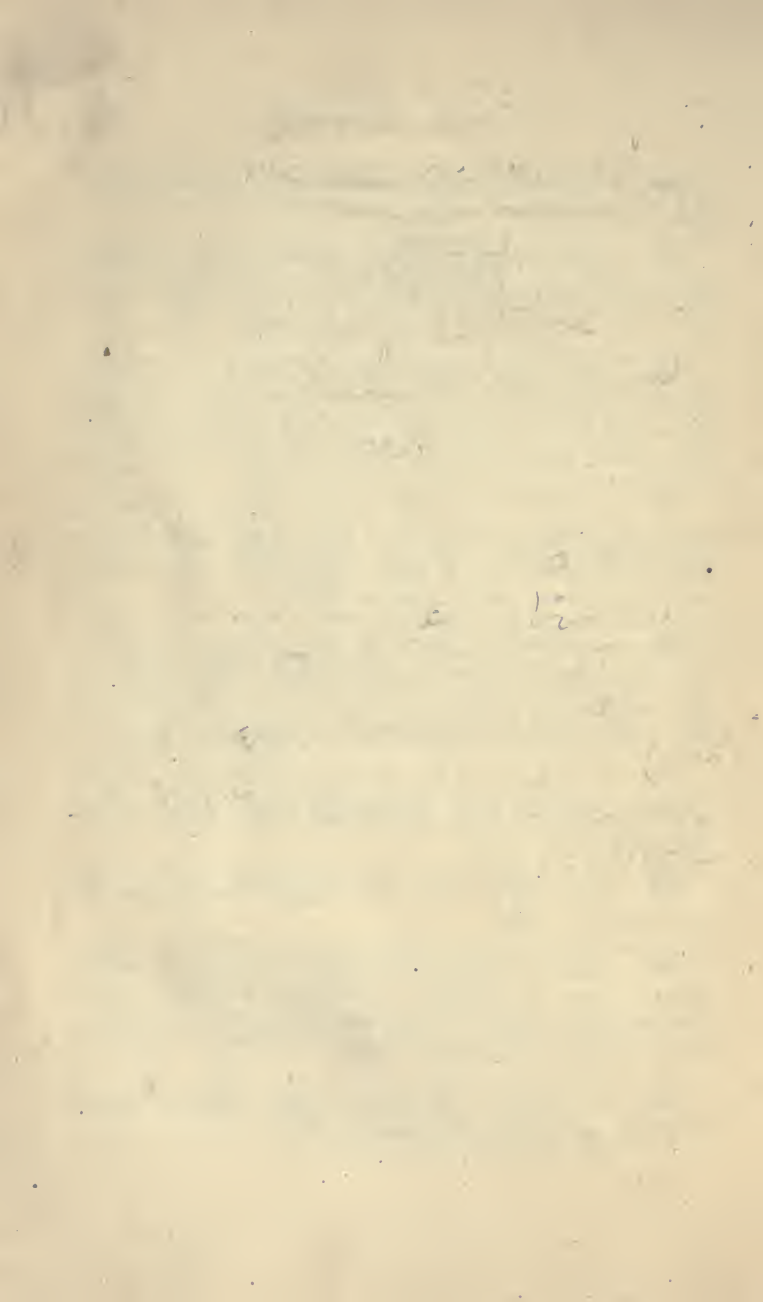
✓ 46. *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. 419.*

✓ 47. *The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb. 320.*

✓ 48. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. 299.*

✓ 49. *Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative. 318.*

50. *The supine in um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. 476.*



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

This Vocabulary includes all the words of the Reading Lessons.

IN this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, and words obviously formed directly from others, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem*. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *cūra* referred to *cūrō*, and *cūrō* to *cūra*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *cūra*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , prep. w. abl., <i>from, by</i> .	<i>ab-sum</i> , -esse, <i>āfuī, āfutūrus</i> , <i>be away, be absent, be distant</i> ;
<i>ab-dicō</i> , -āre, <i>āvī, -ātus</i> , <i>reject</i> ;	with <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> and abl. (516.)
with <i>sē</i> , <i>resign, abdicate</i> .	
<i>ab-dūcō</i> , -ere, - <i>dūxī, -ductus</i> , <i>lead away, take off; abduct</i> .	<i>ab-ūtor</i> , -ī, - <i>ūsus sum</i> , <i>misuse</i> ;
	<i>abuse</i> ; with abl. (361.)
<i>ab-eō</i> , -īre, - <i>ii, -itūrus</i> , <i>go from, go off, go away</i> . (520.)	<i>āc</i> , conj., see <i>atque</i> .
<i>ab-iciō</i> , -ere, - <i>iēcī, iectus</i> [<i>iaciō</i>],	<i>ac-cēdō</i> , -ere, - <i>cessī, -cessūrus</i>
<i>throw off, throw down</i> .	[<i>ad</i>], <i>go or come near, approach</i> .
<i>abs-tergeō</i> , -ēre, - <i>tersī, -tersus</i> ,	<i>ac-cendō</i> , -ere, - <i>dī, -sus</i> , <i>kindle, inflame</i> .
<i>wipe off</i> .	
<i>abs-tineō</i> , -ēre, - <i>uī, -tentus</i>	<i>ac-cidō</i> , -ere, - <i>cidī</i> , — [<i>ad, cadō</i>],
[<i>teneō</i>], <i>keep back; refrain</i>	<i>fall upon, fall out, happen</i> .
<i>from, abstain</i> .	ACCIDENT.

- ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiō], (*take to*), *receive, accept*.
 ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, causa], *accuse*.
 ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen; active, eager*. (163.) ACRID.
 acerbus, -a, -um [ācer], *bitter, sour*.
 aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge; line of battle*.
 ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly*.
 acūtus, -a, -um [acuō, *sharpen*], *sharp*.
 ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near*.
 ad-eō, adv. *to this; so, so very*. Cf. *ita, sic, and tam*.
 ad-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, visit*. (520.)
 ad-ferō (aff-), -ferre, attulī (adt-), adlātus (all-), *bear to, bring*. (521.)
 ad-flīgō (aff-), -ere, -flīxī, flīctus, *dash at; weaken, afflict*.
 ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw to; add to*.
 ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *aid, help*.
 ad-ligō (all-), -āre, -āvī, ātus, *bind, tie*.
 ad-orior, -irī, -ortus sum (*rise up against*), *attack*.
 ad-rēpō (arr-), -ere, -sī, —, *creep towards, steal up*.
 ad-ripiō (arr-), -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō], *seize, snatch*.
 ad-sidō, -ere, -ēdī, —, *sit down*.
 ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (aff-), -futūrus, *be present, be here; w. dat.* (516.)
 adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscō, *grow*], *youth, young person*. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. *iuvenis*.
 adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō, *approach*], *approach, arrival*. ADVENT.
 adversus, -a, -um [p. of ad-vertō], *turned towards, opposite, in front*.
 aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building*. EDIFICE.
 aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs, *house, faciō*], *build*. EDIFY.
 aedis (ēs-), -is, f. *building; plur. house*.
 Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans, a Gallic tribe*.
 aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, weak, feeble*. (500.)
 Aegyptus, -ī, f. *Egypt*.
 aēr, aēris, m. (acc. āera), *air*.
 aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*.
 aetās, -ātis, f. *life, age*.
 Africa, -ae, f. *Africa*.
 Africānus, -ī, m. [Āfrica], *Africanus, surname of Scipio*.
 ager, agrī, m. *field, territory*. (57.)
 ag-gredior (adg-), -ī, -gressus sum [ad, gradior, *step*], *approach, attack*.
 agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, chase, drive*. AGITATE.
 āgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*. Cf. *cōgnōscō*.
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead; act, do; celebrate; pass (life)*.
 agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer*.
 Albānus, -a, -um, adj. *Alban; as*

- noun, *inhabitant of Alba, a town in Latium.*
- albus, -a, -um, adj. *white.*
- Alexander, -drī, m. *Alexander, king of Macedon.*
- aliquam-diū, adv. *for a time.*
- ali-quandō, adv. [alius], *at some time; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.
- ali-quantum, -ī, n. [alius], *some, a considerable amount.*
- aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some, any.* (308.)
- alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another.* (292.)
- alō, -ere, -uī, -tus, or -itus, *nourish, strengthen.*
- Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps.*
- alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one, . . . the other.* (291, 292, a.)
- altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], *height.*
- altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep.*
- ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk, take a walk.*
- amīcitia, -ae, f. [amicus], *friendship.*
- amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly; noun, friend.*
- amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like, be fond of.* (511.)
- amplius, adv. comp. *more, longer.*
- ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*
- anguis, -is, m. *serpent, snake.*
- angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*
- anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus], *turn the mind to, notice.*
- animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (148.)
- animus, -ī, m. *mind, soul, spirit.*
- annus, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.
- ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*
- anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*
- ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *go before.*
- ante-quam, adv. *sooner than, before.*
- antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus. (175, 207.)
- aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *open.*
- ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.
- ap-plaudō, -ere, -sī, -sus [ad], *applaud.*
- ap-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ad], *seize, take hold of.*
- apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*
- aqua, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.
- āra, -ae, f. *altar.* Page 8.
- arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* Page 34.
- arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*
- arceō, ēre, -uī, —, *keep off.*
- arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.* (231.) ARC. Page 73.
- arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep; difficult, arduous.*
- arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons.*
- armō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*
- arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.*
- Arpīnum, -ī, n. *Arpinum, a town in Italy.*
- ars, artis, f. *art, skill; plur. qualities.*
- arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field.*
- arx, arcis, f. [arceō], *citadel.* (152.)

Asia, -ae, f. *Asia*.

at, conj. *but*. Cf. sed and autem.

āter, -tra, -trum, adj. *black*. Cf. niger.

Athēna, -ae, f. *Athena*, a goddess.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. *Athens*.

Athēniēnsis, -is, m. [Athēnae], *an Athenian*.

at-que (before vowels and consonants, āc before consonants only) [ad], *and also, and especially, and*. Cf. et and -que.

at-tingō, -ere, -tigī, tāctus [ad, tangō], *touch, reach*.

at-tonitus, -a, -um [ad], *thunder-struck, astounded, awe-struck*.

auctōritās, -ātis, f. *authority, dignity*.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx], *daring, boldness*.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold*. (163.) AUDACIOUS.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum [audāx], *dare, be bold*. (363, a.)

audiō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *hear, listen*. (515.) AUDIENCE.

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away*. (510.) ABLATIVE.

au-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, — [ab], *run away, escape*.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus [auxili-um], *increase, enlarge*.

Augustus, -ī, m. *Augustus, title of Caesar Octavianus as emperor*.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden*.

auris, -is, f. *ear*.

aurum, ī, n. *gold*.

aut, conj. *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover*.

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support*; plur. *auxiliaries*.

avārus, -a, -um, adj. *greedy, rapacious*. AVARICIOUS.

avis, -is, f. *bird*. (148, c.)

avunculus, -ī, m. [dimin. of avus, *grandfather*], (*maternal*) *uncle*.

barba, -ae, f. *beard*.

barbarus, -ī, m. *barbarian*.

beātus, -a, -um, adj. *happy*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [bellum], *war, carry on war*. Cf. bellum gerō.

bellum, -ī, n. [bellō], *war*.

bene, adv. [bonus], *well*. (215.)

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus] (*of good birth*), *kind, good*. BENIGNANT.

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast*.

bibō, -ere, bibī, —, *drink*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good*. (207, 500.)

bōs, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow*. (499.)

bracchium, -ī, n. *arm*.

brevis, -e, adj. *short, brief*.

Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain*.

Brūtus, -ī, m. *Brutus, a Roman surname*.

C., abbreviation for *Gāius*.

cachinnō, -āre, —, —, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rīdeō.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall*.

caedēs, -is, f. [caedō, cut], *slaughter, carnage*.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, *cut; kill*.

- caenum, -ī, n. *dirt, filth, mire.*
- Caesar (C. I.), -aris, m. *Caius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman.*
- calcar, -āris, n. [calx, *heel*], *spur.* (148.) Page 186.
- calceus, -ī, m. *shoe.* Page 152.
- Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania, a district of Italy.*
- Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *Campanian.*
- canis, -is, m. and f. *dog.*
- Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannae.*
- cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cantus], *sing.* CHANT.
- cantus, -ūs, m. [cantō], *singing, song.* CHANT.
- capessō, -ere, -īvi (-iī), -ītūrus [capiō], *take eagerly; resort to.*
- capillus, -ī, m. [caput], *hair (of the head).*
- capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture.*
- captivus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*
- Capua, -ae, f. *Capua, a city in Italy.*
- caput, -itis, n. *head.* (126.) CAPITAL.
- carcer, -eris, m. *prison.*
- cārē, adv. [cārus], *dearly.*
- careō, -ēre, -uī, -ītūrus, *be in want of, lack, want; with abl.*
- carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble.*
- carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart, car.*
- Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage, a town in Africa.*
- Carthāgō Nova, *a town in Spain.*
- cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious.*
- Casca, -ae, m. *Casca.*
- castra, -ōrum, n. *camp.*
- cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss.*
- Catilīna, -ae, m. *Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator.*
- Catō, -ōnis, m. *Cato, a celebrated Roman censor.*
- causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason; causā (after a genitive), for the sake.*
- celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer, *swift*], *swiftness, speed.*
- celeriter, adv. [celer], *swiftly.*
- cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *conceal.*
- cēna, -ae, f. *dinner.*
- cēseō, -ēre, -uī, -us, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* Cf. putō.
- CENSURE.
- centēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [centum], *hundredth.*
- centum, num. adj., indecl. *hundred.* CENT.
- Cerēs, -eris, f. *Ceres, goddess of agriculture.* CEREAL.
- certāmen, -inis, n. [certō], *strife, contest.*
- certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiōrem faciō, make (one) more certain, inform.*
- cerva, -ae, f. *deer, hind.*
- Christus, -ī, m. *Christ.*
- cibus, -ī, m. *food.*
- Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero, a famous Roman orator.*
- Cimber, -brī, m. *Cimbrian.*
- Cincinnātus, -ī, m. *Cincinnatus, a famous Roman.*
- circum, prep. w. acc., *around.*
- circum-stō, -āre, -stetī, —, *stand around, surround.*

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *surround; circumvent.*

citerior, -ius, adj. (no positive), *hither.* (200.)

cīvis, -is, m. and f. *citizen.* (148, c.)

cīvītās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship.* CITY.

clādēs, -is, f. *disaster, overthrow, defeat.*

clāmītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, *shout*], *shout, cry.* CLAMOR.

clārus, -a, -um, adj. *clear, loud;* *renowned, famous.*

classis, -is, f. *fleet.*

clausula, -ae, f. [claudō, *close*], *close, conclusion.*

cliēns, -entis, m. *client.* (152.)

coepī, -isse, coeptus (*defective*; tenses from present stem wanting), *began.*

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m), gnōscō], *learn, recognize, know, understand.* Cf. āgnōscō.

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

collis, -is, m. *hill.* Cf. mōns.

colloquium, -ī, n. [colloquor, *converse*], *conversation, colloquy.*

collum, -ī, n. *neck.*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *care for, cultivate, till; honor.* Cf. incola, agricola.

columba, -ae, f. *dove.*

com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-), primi-

tive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.

comes, -itis, m. and f. [com, eō], *comrade, companion.*

comitātus, -ūs, m. [comes], *company.*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, *in-trust, commit.*

commodē, adv. *properly, suitably.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate, move.* COM-MOTION.

cōmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *comb, dress.*

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, fill up, cover.*

com-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *seize, catch, grasp; comprehend.*

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [com], *grant, allow, concede; depart, withdraw.*

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *rouse up, spur on.* Cf. incitō.

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *cry out together, shout.*

con-curro, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursus [com], *run together, rush together.*

concursum, -ūs, m. [concurrō], *assault.*

con-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [com, quatiō, *shake*], *shake violently.*

con-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [com], *conceal, hide.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus

(coll-), [com], *bring together, collect.* CONFER.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out.*

cōn-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus [com], *stab, pierce.*

cōn-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [com, iaciō], *throw together; throw, put.*

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. [coniūrō, *conspire*], *conspirators.*

con-locō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *place, station.*

con-loquor (coll-), -ī, -locūtus sum [com], *speak together, converse.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt, try.*

cōn-salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *salute cordially, greet.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōn-sentiō], *agreement, unanimity, consent.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtūs sum [com], *follow close upon; follow.*

cōn-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus [com], *join; with manum, fight hand to hand.*

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *preserve, save.*

cōn-sidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus [com], *sit down.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *advice, counsel, prudence, wisdom; plan, design.*

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold.*

cōn-spicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōn-spiciō], *get sight of, descry.*

cōnstāns, -antis, adj. [p. of cōn-stō, *stand firm*], *firm, steady.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstāns], *firmness; constancy.*

cōn-sternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *confound, terrify.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul.* (138.)

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, *strain*], *struggle, exertion.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of contineō], *contented; w. abl.*

con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [com, teneō], *hold together, hold, contain.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [con-tineō], *continuous, successive.*

contra, prep. w. acc., *against.* CONTRARY.

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com], *come together, assemble; convene.*

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *call together, summon, convoke.*

cōpia, -ae, f. [com, ops], *abundance, wealth; plur. troops; forces.* CAPIOUS.

Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth.* (13, 2.)

Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.*

Cornēlius, -ī, m. *Cornelius, a Roman family name.*

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn.* (230.) Page 130.

corpus, -oris, n. *body.* (138.) CORPSE.

corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus [com, regō], *make straight, reform, correct.*

cor-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [com, rapiō], *seize, take hold of.*

corvus, -ī, m. *raven; grappling-hook.*

cottidiē (cot-), adv. [quot, diēs], *daily*.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *trust, believe*; w. dat. CREDIT.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make, create*; *choose, elect*.

cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor, *blood*], *bloody*.

culpa, -ae, f. [culpō], *blame, fault*. CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [culpa], *blame, find fault with*.

cum, conj. *when; as, since; though, although*. (382, 435.)

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*.

cūnae, -ārum, f. plur. *cradle*.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *desire, be eager for*. Cf. volō.

cūr, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore*.

cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety*.

Cūriātius, -ī, m. *Curiaius, one of the Curiatii*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra], *care for, take care*.

currus, -ūs, m. [currō, *run*], *chariot, car*.

cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], *running*.

custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs], *guard; custody, prison*.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -ītus [custōs, *guard*], *guard, protect, defend*.

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper*.

cymba, -ae, f. *boat*. Page 25.

Dārēus, -ī, m. *Darius, king of Persia*.

dātor, -ōris, m. [dō], *giver*.

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of* (of time), *in, during*.

dea, -ae, f. [deus], *goddess*. (Page 13, note 5.)

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *owe, ought*. DEBIT, DEBT.

decem, num. adj., indecl. *ten*.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus (*separate from*), *decide, settle, determine; decree*.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth*.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down, lead off, escort*.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tire out, exhaust*.

dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect*.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [defendō], *defender, protector*.

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary, very tired*.

de-inde (*from thence*), *then, afterwards*.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight*.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy*. DELETE.

dē-litēscō, -ere, -lituī, — [latec], *hide away, lie hid*.

Delphī, -ōrum, m. *Delphi, a town in Greece*.

dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *migrate from; remove, go away*.

denarius, -ī, m. *denarius, a coin*.

dēnique, adv. *at last, finally*.

dēns, dentis, m. *tooth*.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put down*.

dē-serō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *abandon, desert*.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus (*stand off or apart*), *leave off, cease; desist*.

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be from, be wanting, lack*; w. dat. (516.)

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, deter*.

deus, -ī, m. *god*. (499.)

dē-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -vīctus, *overcome, subdue*.

dexter, -era, -erum (oftener -trum), adj. *right (hand)*.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell, speak; appoint*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator*.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *dictatorship*.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f. *day*. (258.)

dif-fīcilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, *apart from easy*], *hard, difficult*. (198.)

dīligēns, -entis, adj. *diligent, careful, industrious*.

dīlīgenter, adv. [dīligēns], *diligently, industriously*.

dīlīgēntia, -ae, f. [dīligēns], *diligence, carefulness, industry*.

ā-nīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend*. Cf. pūgnō.

dī-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move asunder; separate, drive away*.

dis-, dī- (a prefix denoting separation), *under, apart, in different directions*. Cf. dīmoveō, discēdō, dispertiō, dissimilis.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *depart, withdraw, go off*.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*.

dis-pertiō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītus [partiō, *divide*], *distribute, divide*.

dis-similis, -e, adj. (*apart from like*), *unlike, dissimilar*. (198.)

dis-trahō, -ere, -āxī, -actus, *pull apart; perplex, distract*.

diū, adv. *for a long time, long*.

diūtius (comp. of diū), *longer*.

divitiae, -ārum, f. [dīves, *rich*], *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give; put; dō poenās, suffer punishment*.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*.

doctor, -ōris, m. [doceō], *teacher*.

dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, grief*. DOLOROUS.

dominus, -ī, m. *lord, master*. (61.) DOMINATE.

domus, -ūs, f. *house, home*; domī, *at home*. (407, a, 499.) DOMESTIC.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], *gift, present*. DONATE.

Drūsus, -ī, m. *Drusus, a Roman*. dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dubius], *hesitate, doubt*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful*. DUBIOUS.

ducentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ducentī], *two hundredth*.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred*.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dux], *lead*.

Duīlius (C.), -ī, m. *Caius Duilius, a Roman general*.

dulcis, -e, adj. *sweet, pleasant*. DULCET.

dum, conj. *while, as long as; until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. *two*. (284.)

duo-dē-trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. *twenty-eight*.

dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō],

leader, general. DUKE. Cf. imperātor.

ē, see ex.

ecquid, interrog. adv. *whether . . . at all.*

ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put forth, raise, utter.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, train, educate.*

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, lead forth, bring away.*

ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex], *bear out, carry forth.* (521.)

ego, pers. pron. I. (245.)

-ēheu, interj. *alas!*

ēlegantia, -ae, f. *elegance.*

elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant.*

ē-lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *deceive, mock.*

ē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *arise, come forth; emerge.*

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, mīssus, *send forth, let loose.*

enim, conj. (never the first word), *for.*

Ennius, -ī, m. *Ennius, father of Roman poetry.*

eō, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there.*

eō, īre, īvī (īī), itūrus, *go.* (520.)

epistula, -ae, f. *letter, epistle.*

epulae, -ārum, f. plur. *feast, banquet.*

eques, -itis, m. [equus], *horseman, knight.* Page 44.

equitātus, -ūs, m. [eques], (*body of equites*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m. *horse.*

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō], *snatch out, seize; sē ēripere, escape.*

ēruditus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of ērudīō, *train*], *educated, learned.*

et, conj. *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.* Cf. atque, ac, and -que.

etiam, adv. and conj. [et, iam, *and now*], *also, even.*

Eurōpa, -ae, f. *Europe.*

ē-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *overturn, destroy.*

ex or ē, prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. *elevated, lofty, high.*

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, exclaim.* Cf. clāmītō.

ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think out, devise, contrive.*

excubiae, -ārum, f. plur. *watch, watchmen.*

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *excuse.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out, come out.* (520.) EXIT.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, *train*], (*the thing trained*), *army.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj. *excellent, remarkable.*

ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, begin.*

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set forth, explain, relate.*

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, take, capture.* Cf. oppūgnō.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *come forth; arise; be, exist.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *await, wait for, expect.*

ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die.*

ex-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus

(*quench completely*), *extinguish; kill, destroy.*

ex-sultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *leap up, exult.*

ex-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten, affright.*

ex-timēscō, -ere, -timuī, — [timeō], *fear greatly.*

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *draw out, drag out.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [exterus], *outermost, last; extreme.* (199.)

Fabricius, -ī, m. *Fabricius, a famous Roman general.*

fābula, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *story, tale, fable.*

facētus, -a, -um, adj. *witty, facetious.*

facile, adv. [facilis], *easily.*

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy.* (198.)

FACILITY.

facinus, -oris, n. [faciō], (*the thing done*), *deed; crime.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*

fāma, -ae, f. [for, *speak*], *rumor, report; fame, renown.*

familia, -ae, f. *household, family.*

fascis, -is, m. *bundle, load.*

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tire out, fatigue.*

fātum, -ī, n. [for, *speak*], *fate.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor, befriend; w. dat.*

fēliciter, adv. [fēlix, *fortunate*], *luckily, fortunately, successfully.*

fēmina, -ae, f. *woman.* Cf. mulier. FEMININE.

fera, -ae, f. [ferus, *wild*], *wild beast.*

ferē, adv. *nearly, for the most part, almost, about.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring; fertur, it is said; ferunt, they say.* (521.) Cf. portō and vehō.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce, impetuous.* FEROCIOUS.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron.*

ferrum, -ī, n. *iron; sword.*

fessus, -a, -um, adj. *weary, exhausted.*

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidō], *trusty, faithful.*

fidēliter, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully.*

fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, *trust.* (362, a.)

fīdus, -a, -um, adj. [fīdō], *trusty, faithful.*

figūra, -ae, f. *shape, form; figure.*

fīlia, -ae, f. *daughter.* (P. 13, n. 5.)

fīliolus, -ī, m. [dimin. of filius], *little son.*

fīlius, -ī, m. *son.* (59.) FILIAL.

fīnis, -is, m. *end, border; plur. territories.* (148, c.) FINAL.

fīō, fierī, factus sum (*supplies pass. to faciō*), *be made, become.* (520.)

flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus, *bend, turn.*

flōreō, -ēre, -uī, — [flōs], *flourish, be conspicuous, be distinguished.*

flōs, flōris, m. [flōreō], *flower.*

fluctus, -ūs, m. [fluō, *flow*], *wave.*

flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō], (*that which flows*), *river, stream.*

foedus, -eris, n. *league, treaty.*

folium, -ī, n. *leaf.* FOLIAGE.

fōns, fontis, m. *spring, fountain, source.*

fore, for futūrum esse.

foris, -is, f. *door, gate*; plur. *fold-ing door*.

fōrma, -ae, f. *form, figure*; *beauty*.

formīdō, -inis, f. *fear, terror*.

fōrte, adv. [fōrs, *chance*], *by chance, perhaps*.

fortis, -e, adj. *strong, brave, courageous*.

fortiter, adv. [fortis], *bravely, courageously*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], *strength, bravery, endurance*; *fortitude*.

fōrtūna, -ae, f. [fōrs, *chance*], *fortune, good fortune*.

forum, -ī, n. *market-place*; *forum*.

frāter, -tris, m. *brother*. FRATERNAL.

frīgus, -oris, n. *cold*.

frūmentum, -ī, n. [fruor], *corn, grain*.

fruor, -ī, fructus sum, *enjoy*; w. abl. (361.)

frūstrā, adv. *in vain*.

Fūfetius, -ī, m. *Fufetius, leader of the Albans*.

fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō], *flight*.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, — [fugō, fuga], *run away, flee; flee from*. FUGITIVE.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fugiō, fuga], *put to flight, rout*.

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, —, *flash, gleam*.

fūnāle, -is, n. *torch*.

fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *perform, discharge*; w. abl. (361.)

FUNCTION.

Gāius, Gāī (also written Cāius), m. *Caius, a Roman first name*.

Galba, -ae, m. *Galba*.

galea, -ae, f. *helmet*. Page 97.

Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul*.

gallīna, -ae, f. [gallus, *cock*], *hen*.

Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul*.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice*. (362, a.)

gaudium, -ī, n. [gaudeō], *joy, gladness*.

geminātus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of geminō], *doubled, double*.

gener, -erī, m. *son-in-law*.

genus, -eris, n. *race; kind, class*.

Germānia, -ae, f. *Germany*.

Germānus, -ī, m. *a German*.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *bear, carry on, wage (war); manage, do*.

gladius, -ī, m. *sword*. Page 67.

glōria, -ae, f. *glory, fame, renown*.

Gracchus, -ī, m. *Gracchus, a Roman name*.

gradus, -ūs, m. *step; period, stage*. (230.) GRADE.

Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*.

Graecus, -ī, m. *a Greek*.

grāmen, -inis, n. *grass*.

graphium, -ī, n. *stilus (for writing)*.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [grātus], *congratulate*.

grātus, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing*. GRATEFUL.

gravis, -e, adj. *heavy, severe*. GRAVE.

graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily, severely, vehemently*.

grex, gregis, m. *flock, herd*.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste, eat*.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, keep*.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of *habere*], *inhabit*; *dwell, live*.

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general*.
Page 55.

hasta, -ae, f. *spear*. Page 15.

haud, adv. *not*. Cf. *nōn*.

Helvētia, -ae, f. *Helvetia*.

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m. the *Helvetians*.

Henna, -ae, f. *Henna, a city of Sicily*.

herī, adv. *yesterday*.

hīberna, -ōrum, n. [*hiems*], *winter-quarters* (sc. *castra*). **HIBERNATE**.

hīc, *haec*, *hōc*, demon. pron. *this, this of mine*; as pers. pron. *he, she, it*. (100.)

hīc, adv. *here, hereupon*.

hiems (*hiemps*), *hiemis*, f. *winter; storm*.

hilaritās, -ātis, f. *cheerfulness, hilarity*.

hinc, adv. [*hīc*], *hence*.

Hispania, -ae, f. *Spain*.

Hispanus, -ī, m. *a Spaniard*.

historia, -ae, f. *history*.

hō-diē, adv. [*hōc*, *diē*], *to-day*.

homō, -inis, m. and f. (*human being*), *man*. (141.)

hōra, -ae, f. *hour*.

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horatius, one of the Horatii*.

horror, -ōris, m. *trembling; dread, horror*.

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*. (43.)

hospes, -itis, m. and f. *guest-friend*.

hostilis, -e, adj. [*hostis*], *hostile*.

hostis, -is, m. and f. *enemy*. (148, 149.) **HOSTILE**.

humī (loc. of *humus*, *ground*), *on the ground*.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, — [*iaciō*], (*be thrown*), *lie*.

iaciō, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactus* [*iaceō*], *throw, cast, hurl*.

iam, adv. *already, now, at last*; *nōn iam, no longer*. Cf. *nunc*.

iamiam, adv. *already*; *iamiam ventūrus, just about to come*.

ibi, adv. [*is*], *in that place, there*.

[*īcō*], -ere, *īcī*, *ictus*, *strike*; *foedus īcō, make a league*.

īdem, *eadem*, *īdem*, demon. pron. [*is*], *same*. (303.)

īdōneus, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable*.

igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then*. Cf. *itaque*.

īgnis, -is, m. *fire*. (148.) **IGNITE**.

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*īgnārus*, *ignorant*], *not know, be ignorant of*. Cf. *nēsciō*. **IGNORE**.

īlicō, adv. [*in*, *locō*], *on the spot, immediately*.

ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (yonder)*; as pers. pron. *he, she, it*. (100.)

immānis, -e, adj. *huge, immense*.

im-pār, -paris, adj. [*in*], *unequal; not a match for*.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [*imperō*], *commander, general*. **EMPEROR**.

imperātum, -ī, n. [*imperō*], *order, command*.

im-perītus, -a, -um, adj. [*in*], *unskilled*.

- imperium**, -ī, n. [imperō], *command, rule, power*. EMPIRE.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [imperium], *order, command*; w. dat. IMPERATIVE.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gain, procure, obtain*.
- impetus**, -ūs, m. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, assault*. IMPETUOUS.
- im-plōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore*.
- im-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [in], *put or place upon; mount*; w. dat. IMPOSE.
- im-pudēns**, -entis, adj. [in, *not*; pudēns, *modest*], *shameless, impudent, bold, brazen*.
- in**, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against, for*; w. abl., *in, on*.
- in-**, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. *un-, in-, not*.
- inānis**, -e, adj. *empty, useless*.
- in-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *(take in hand), begin*. INCIPIENT.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite, incite*.
- in-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out; appeal to*.
- in-cōgnitus**, -a, -um, adj. *unknown*.
- incola**, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant*.
- in-colō**, -ere, -uī, — [incola], *dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell*. Cf. habitō and vivō.
- incolumis**, -e, adj. *unharmed, safe*.
- in-crepō**, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, resound, clash*.
- in-cūriōsus**, -a, -um, adj. *careless, negligent*.
- inde**, adv. [is], *thence*.
- in-dicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, *proclaim, appoint*.
- indūtus**, -a, -um [p. of induō], *clothed, clad*.
- in-eō**, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go in, enter; begin*. (520.)
- in-eptus**, -a, -um, adj. [aptus, *fit*], *awkward, silly*.
- in-ermis**, -e, adj. [arma], *unarmed*.
- īnferī**, -ōrum, m. [īnferus], *inhabitants of the lower world; the Infernals*.
- īnferior**, -ius, adj. *lower*. (199.)
- īn-ferō**, īnferre, intulī, inlātus (ill-), (bear in or against), *cause; bellum īnferre, make war upon*; w. dat. (521.)
- īnferus**, -a, -um, adj. *below*. (199.)
- īnfestus**, -a, -um, adj. *unsafe; hostile*.
- īnfrā**, prep. with acc., *below*.
- īngenium**, -ī, n. *genius*.
- īngēns**, -entis, adj. *huge, great*.
- in-gredior**, -ī, gressus sum [gradior], *step in, enter*.
- in-hiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gape at, long for*.
- in-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw upon, cast upon*.
- in-imīcus**, -ī, m. *enemy* [amīcus]. (149.) INIMICAL.
- in-lidō** (ill-), -ere, -sī, -sus, *dash against, crush*.
- inopia**, -ae, f. [inops, *without resources*], *want, poverty, lack*.
- inquit** (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he, says he, or she*.

- in-ruō (irr-), -ere, -uī, —, *rush upon, make an attack.*
- īn-siliō, -īre, -uī, — [saliō], *leap upon.*
- ✓ in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build in, form; instruct, train; prepare, provide.*
- ✓ īnsula, -ae, f. *island.* PENINSULA.
- in-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in, be among; w. dat. and w. in and abl.* (516.)
- in-tāctus, -a, -um, adj. *untouched, uninjured.*
- integer, -gra, -grum, adj. *untouched, uninjured; fresh.*
- ✓ inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, amid.*
- ✓ inter-dum, adv. *sometimes.*
- inter-eā, adv. *meanwhile.*
- ✓ inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *kill, put to death.* Cf. necō and occidō.
- ✓ interim, adv. *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
- inter-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *entreat, importune.*
- inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, inquire, question.* (422.) INTERROGATION.
- inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be among, be present at; w. dat.* (516.) Cf. adsum.
- inter-vāllum, -ī, n. *interval, distance; per intervalla, at intervals.*
- intus, adv. [in], *within, inside.*
- in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, discover.* Cf. reperiō.
- in-vicem, adv. *in turn, mutually.*
- in-vīctus, -a, -um, adj. [vincō], *unconquered, invincible.*
- in-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*
- iocus, -ī, m. (plur. iocī and ioca), *joke, jest; per iocum, in jest, for a joke.*
- ✓ ipse, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron. *self, very.* (303.)
- ✓ ira, -ae, f. *anger, wrath, ire.*
- is, ea, id, demon. pron. *that; as pers. pron. he, she, it.* (119.)
- ✓ iste, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (of yours).* (303.)
- isthmus, -ī, m. *isthmus.*
- ✓ ita, adv. *so, thus.* Cf. adeō, sic, tam.
- ✓ Italia, -ae, f. *Italy.*
- ita-que, conj. *and so, therefore.* Cf. igitur.
- ✓ iter, itineris, n. [eō], *way, journey, march.* (499.) ITINERANT.
- iterum, adv. *a second time, again.* ITERATION.
- ✓ iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command.* Cf. imperō.
- iūgerum, -ī, n. (gen. plur. iūgerūm), *acre, juger.*
- iugulum, -ī, n. *throat, neck.*
- iugum, -ī, n. *yoke.*
- Iuppiter, Iovis, m. *Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans.* (499.)
- iūs, iūris, n. *right, justice.*
- ✓ iūssū, m. only abl. [iubeō], *by command, by order.*
- ✓ iūstus, -a, -um, adj. *just.*
- ✓ iuvenis, -e, adj. *young.* Cf. adulēscēns. (207.) JUVENILE.
- iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis], *body of youth, youth.*
- ✓ iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*
- Labiēnus, -ī, m. *Labiēnus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.*

labor, -ōris, m. [labōrō], *labor, toil*. Cf. opus.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], *work, toil; suffer*. ELABORATE.

laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry*.

lapis, -idis, m. *stone*. (130.)

LAPIDARY.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lurk, lie hid*.

LATENT.

Latīnī, -ōrum, m. [Latium], *the Latins*.

lātītūdō, -inis, f. [lātus], *width*.

LATITUDE.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide*.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus], *praise, laud*.

laus, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, depute], *ambassador, deputy, lieutenant*.

LEGATE.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather; select; read*.

lēnis, -e, adj. *soft, smooth, gentle, mild*. LENIENT.

lēnōcinium, -ī, n. *allurement, charm, personal adornment*.

Lentulus, -ī, m. *Lentulus*.

leō, -ōnis, m. *lion*.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [levis], *lift up, raise*.

lēx, lēgis, f. *law*. LEGAL.

libenter, adv. [libet, *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly*.

liber, -brī, m. *book*.

liber, -era, -erum, adj. *free*. LIBERAL. (500.)

liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber], *children*. (61.)

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber], *set free, free, liberate*; w. abl. of separation.

libertās, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. *it is permitted*, (one) *may*.

licitor, -ōris, m. *licitor, ceremonial attendant of a high officer*.

līgneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *wooden*.

līgnum, -ī, n. *wood*; plur. *sticks*.

ligō, -ōnis, m. *mattock, hoe*.

littera, -ae, f. *letter (of the alphabet)*; plur. *letter, epistle; despatches*.

locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī and loca), *place, position*. LOCAL.

longē, adv. [longus], *far, far off*.

longus, -a, -um, adj. *long*. LONGITUDE.

lōrum, -ī, n. *thong, strap*.

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [lūdus], *play*. INTERLUDE.

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play*.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *mourn, lament*.

lūgubris, -e, adj. [lūgeō], *doleful, mournful*.

lūna, -ae, f. [lūx], *moon*. LUNATIC.

lupus, -ī, m. *wolf*.

lūx, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light*.

M., abbreviation for *Mārcus*, a Roman first name.

māchina, -ae, f. *machine, engine, device*.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. *sad*.

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more*. (215.)

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* (61.)

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large.* (207.)

māior, -ius, adj. *greater, larger.* (207.) MAJOR.

male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (215.)

maleficus, -ī, m. [male, faciō], *evil-doer.*

mālō, mālī, mālūī, — [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (519.)

malum, -ī, n. [malus], *bad thing, evil.*

malus, -a, -um, adj. *bad, evil.* (207.)

mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō], *order, command.*

manēō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *stay, remain, wait.* PERMANENT.

manus, -ūs, f. *hand; force, band.* (229, a.) MANUAL.

Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus, a Roman first name.*

mare, -is, n. *sea.* (148.) MARINE.

Marius (C.), -ī, m. *Caius Marius, a famous Roman general.*

massa, -ae, f. *mass, lump.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.* MATER-NAL.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*

māximē, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (215.)

māximus, -a, -um, adj. *greatest.* (207.)

medicus, -ī, m. [medeor, *cure*], *physician.* MEDICINE.

medius, -a, -um, adj. *in the middle, middle.*

melior, -ius, *better.* (207.) AMEL-IORATE.

memoria, -ae, f. *memory.*

mendāx, -ācis, adj. [mentior, *lie*], *lying, deceitful.*

mēnsa, -ae, f. *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m. *month.*

Mercurius, -ī, m. *Mercury, messenger of the gods.* (59.)

mergō, -ere, -si, -sus, *sink.*

metus, -ūs, m. *fear, dread.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. *my, mine.* (247.)

micō, -āre, -uī, —, *quiver; flash, gleam.*

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier.* MILITARY. Page 133.

militāris, -e, adj. [mīles], *military.*

militiae (loc. of militia), *in service, in the field.*

mille, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur., mīlia, -ium, *thousand.* (284, d.)

Milō, -ōnis, m. *Milo, a famous Roman.*

Miltiadēs, -is, m. *Miltiades, a Greek general.*

mīmus, -ī, m. *mimic; farce.*

Minerva, -ae, f. *Minerva, goddess of wisdom.*

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten.*

minor, -us, adj. *smaller.* (207.)

Minturnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Minturnae, a town in Campania.*

mirābilis, -e, adj. [mīror], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary.* ADMIRABLE.

miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, wonder at, admire.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable.*

miseria, -ae, f. [miser], *wretchedness, misery.*

mittō, -ēre, mīsī, mīssus, *send.*

MISSION.

moenia, -ium, n. [mūniō], *walls (of a city).*

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs, *pile*], *troublesome, tiresome.*

MOLEST.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, advise, warn.* (512.) MONITOR.

mōns, montis, m. *mountain, hill.*
Cf. collis.

monumentum, -ī, n. [moneō], *monument.* (346, a.)

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

morior, -ī, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus), [mors], *die.*

mors, mortis, f. (morior), *death.*
MORTAL.

mōs, mōris, m. *manner, habit, custom.* MORAL.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

mox, adv. *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman.* Cf. fēmina.

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much, many.* (207.)

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [moenia], *fortify, defend.*

mūnus, -eris, n. *duty, office.*

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall.*

Mūsa, -ae, f. *Muse.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, alter.* MUTATION.

nam, conj. *for.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell, relate, narrate.*

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

Nāsica, -ae, m. *Nasica, surname of one of the Scipios.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor], *race, nation.*

nātū (abl. of nātus), [nāscor], *by birth, in age.*

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor.*

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis], *naval.*

nāvis, -is, f. *ship.* (149.) NAVAL.
Pages 79, 88.

nē, conj. *that not, that; lest; w. hortatory subjunctive, not.*

-ne, interrog. adv. enclitic. (9, 3.)
Cf. nōne and num.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill, slay.*
Cf. interficiō and occīdō.

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus, *bind, weave.* CONNECT.

neg-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec], *disregard, neglect.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say not; deny, refuse.*

nēmō, -inī (dat.), m. and f. [nē, homō], (no gen. or abl.), *no one, nobody.*

nē-quāquam, adv. *by no means, not at all.*

ne-que or nec, conj. *and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. *neither (of two).* (291.) NEUTRAL.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black.* Cf. āter. NEGRO.

nihil, n., indecl. *nothing.* NIHILIST.

Nilus, -ī, m. the *Nile.*

ni-si, conj. *if not, unless, except.*
 nix, nivis, f. *snow.* (499.)
 nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, of high birth; noble.*
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *do harm to, hurt, injure; w. dat.* NOXIOUS. Cf. obsum.
 Nōla, -ae, f. *Nola, a town in Campania.*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.* (519.)
 nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name.*
 NOMINAL.
 nōn, adv. [nē, ūnum], *not.*
 nōn-ne, interrog. adv. *expecting an affirmative answer, not.* Cf. -ne and num.
 nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn, know.* P. nōtus, -a, -um, *as adj. known.*
 noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *our, ours.* Nostrī, *our men.*
 novus, -a, -um, adj. *new.* NOVELTY.
 nox, noctis, f. *night.* (152.) NOCTURNAL.
 nūbēs, -is, f. *cloud.* (148.)
 nūdus, -a, -um, adj. *unclothed, stripped; nude.*
 nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus], *no, none, no one.* (291.) NULLITY.
 num, interrog. adv. *expecting a negative answer, whether.* Cf. nōnne and -ne.
 numerus, -ī, m. *number.*
 numquam, adv. [nē, umquam], *never.*

nunc, adv. *now.* Cf. iam.
 nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius], *report, announce.*
 nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*
 nūper, adv. [for noviper; novus], *recently, lately.*
 Ō, interj. *O, Oh!*
 ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
 ob-eō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go to meet; perish, die.* (520.)
 ob-linō, -ere, -lēvī, -litus, *daub, smear, defile.*
 obliviscor, -ī, oblitus sum, *forget.*
 OBLIVIOUS.
 obses, -idis, m. and f. [ob, sedeō, sit], (*one who sits or remains as a pledge*), *hostage.*
 ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be against, be opposed to; injure; w. dat.* (516.) Cf. noceō.
 ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *comply with, yield to; w. dat.*
 obviam, adv. *in the way; obviam fiō, meet; w. dat.*
 ob-volvō, -ere, -ī, -volūtus, *wrap around, cover up.*
 oc-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [ob, caedō, cut], *cut down, kill.* Cf. necō and interficiō.
 occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, capiō], *take possession of, seize; occupy.* Cf. potior.
 oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob], *run to meet; meet, fall in with.*
 Ocelum, -ī, n. *Ocelum, a town in Hither Gaul.*
 of-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ob], *strike against; come upon, find.*

officium, -ī, n. [opus, faciō], *service, kindness.*

olim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], *(at that time); formerly, once; once upon a time.* Cf. aliquandō.

omnis, -e, adj. *whole, all, every.* Cf. tōtus.

onus, -eris, n. *load, burden.*

onustus, -a, -um, adj. [onus], *laden, loaded.*

opera, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care; operam dō, try.* Cf. labor.

oppidānus, -ī, m. [oppidum], *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*

op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob], *attack, assault, besiege.* Cf. ex-pūgnō.

[ops], opis, f. *aid, help.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj. *best.* (207.)
OPTIMIST.

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor.* Cf. labor.

orātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, *speak*], *orator.*

orbis, -is, m. *circle, orb; orbis terrarum, earth, world.*

ornāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*), *ornament, jewel.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *adorn, ornament, deck.*

os-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus [ob(s)], *stretch out; show, display.*

ōtium, -ī, n. *leisure, idleness.*

ovis, -is, f. *sheep.*

ovō, -āre, —, —, *exult; triumph.*

ōvum, -ī, n. *egg.*

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pāx], *make quiet, subdue.* Cf. vincō.

Padus, -ī, m. *the Po, a river of Italy.*

paene, adv. *nearly, almost.*

paenitentia, -ae, f. *repentance, penitence.*

palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj. *equal.*

parcō, -ere, peperci (parsī), par-sus, *spare; w. dat.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent.* (152, a.)

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey; w. dat.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, bear; lay.*

Parmeniō, -ōnis, m. *Parmenio, one of Alexander's generals.*

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for.*

pars, partis, f. *part, share.*
PARTIAL.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little.* (207.)

pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, tend; pasture.*

passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace; mille passuum, mile.*

pater, -tris, m. *father.* (138.)
PATERNAL.

patienter, adv. [patiēns, *patient*], *patiently, with patience.*

patientia, -ae, f. [patior, *bear*], *patience.*

patria, -ae, f. [patrius, sc. terra; pater], *fatherland, native land, country.* PATRIOTISM.

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little.* PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little.*

paulum, adv. [paulus], *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace.* PACIFY.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make a mistake, commit (a fault), sin.*

pectus, -oris, n. *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, *cattle*], *money.* PECUNIARY.

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier.*

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry.*

pēior, -ius, adj. *worse.* (207.)

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive away; repel.*

pēnsum, -ī, n. [pendō, *weigh*], (*what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning*), *task; lesson, exercise.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, on account of.*

pēra, -ae, f. *bag, wallet.*

per-agrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse.*

per-contor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ask, inquire.*

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *spread abroad.* (521.)

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish; perfect.*

per-fruor, -ī, -frūctus sum, *enjoy thoroughly, enjoy; w. abl.*

periculum, -ī, n. *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril.*

per-itus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of perior, *try*], (*having tried*), *skilful.*

per-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,

allow, grant, suffer, permit; w. dat.

Persae, -ārum, m. *the Persians.*

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

per-stō, -stāre, -stitī, stātūrus, *stand fast, persist.*

per-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, *bind closely; affect deeply, thrill.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade; w. dat.*

per-terreō, -ēre, —, -itus, *thoroughly frighten.*

pertinācia, -ae, f. *perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.* (130.) PEDAL.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. *worst.* (207.) PESSIMIST.

petō, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *seek, demand, beg; attack.* PETITION. Cf. rogō.

pharetra, -ae, f. *quiver.*

Philotīmus, -ī, m. *Philotimus.*

piger, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy.*

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth.*

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin.* Page 102.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please; w. dat.*

plāga, -ae, f. *stroke, blow, thrust.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. [plānus, *even*], (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. *most, very many.* (207.)

plūs, plūris, adj. *more.* (208.)

Plūto, -ōnis, m. *Pluto, god of the lower world.*

pōculum, -ī, n. *cup, bowl.* Page 69.

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], *quit-money; fine, punishment.* PENAL.

Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise.*

Pompēius, -ēī, m. *Pompey, a famous Roman general.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set, pitch (camp).* POSITION.

pōns, pōntis, m. *bridge.*

Popēdius, -ī, m. *Popedius.*

populus, -ī, m. *people.*

Porcius, -ī, m. *Porcius, family name of Cato.*

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door.* PORTAL.

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *carry, bring.* Cf. ferō and vehō.

portus, -ūs, m. *harbor, port.* (231.)

possum, posse, potuī, — [potis, *able, sum*], *be able, can*; plūrimum posse, *be very powerful, have most influence.* (296, 517.)

post, prep. w. acc., *after, behind*; as adv., *afterwards.*

post-eā, adv. *afterwards.*

[posterus], -a, -um, adj. [post], *following, next.* (199.)

post-quam, conj. *after.*

potior, -īrī, -itus sum [potis, *able*], *become master of, get, get possession of*; w. gen. or abl.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae. habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish*; *cause, render.*

prae-cinō, -ere, -cinuī, — [canō, *sing*], *play before.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj. *very splendid, glorious.*

praeda, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prae. dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry before.* (521.)

prae-lūceō, -ēre, -xī, —, *shine before, light the way before.*

praemium, -ī, n. *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

praesidium, -ī, n. [prae. sedeō, *sit before*], *defense, help, protection.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand out, surpass, be superior to.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be before, be at the head of, command*; w. dat. (516.)

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praetextus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of praetexō, *fringe*], *bordered*; toga praetexta, *toga with purple border, worn by the higher magistrates and by free-born children.* Page 191.

prātum, -ī, n. *meadow.*

pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [pretium, *price*], *precious.*

[prex, precis], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. *first, foremost.* (200.) PRIME.

prīnceps, -cipis, m. [prīmus, capiō], (taking the first place), *chief, leader.* (126.) PRINCE.

prius, adv. [prior], *before, sooner, previously.*

prius-quam, conj. *sooner than, before.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for*; *considering.*

prō, interj. *O!*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. prōgredior. *Q. discedō.*

procul, adv. *far, afar off.*

proelium, -ī, n. *battle, combat.* Cf. pūgna.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring forth.* (521.)

proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, march, go.* Cf. exeō.

prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [*gradior, step*], *go forward, advance, progress.* Cf. prō-cēdō.

prope, prep. w. acc., *near, near to; adv. close at hand, nearly.*

properē, adv. *hastily, quickly.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.*

propior, -ius, adj. [*prope*], *nearer.* (200.)

propius, adv. [*prope*], *nearer.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put before, set forth; make known, declare.* PROPOSE.

prōpositum, -ī, n. [*prōpōnō*], *purpose, design, resolution.* PROPOSITION.

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

Prōserpina, -ae, f. *Proserpine, daughter of Ceres.*

prō-siliō, -īre, -uī, — [*saliō*], *leap forward.*

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *be before, be useful to, benefit; w. dat.* (518.)

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj. *nearest, next.* (200.) PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [*for prōvi-*

dēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent.* (163.)

prūdētia, -ae, f. [*prūdēns*], *fore-sight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [*populus*], (*pertaining to the people*), *public.*

Pūblius, -ī, m. *Publius, a Roman first name.*

puella, -ae, f. [*dimin. of puer*], *girl, maiden.*

puer, -erī, m. *boy, child.* (57, 61.) PUERILE.

puerulus, -ī, m. [*dimin. of puer*], *little boy.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m. *short dagger.*

pūgna, -ae, f. [*pūgnō*], *battle, contest.* Cf. proelium. PUGNACIOUS.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pūgna*], *fight.* Cf. dīmicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, fair, pretty.*

pulvis, -eris, m. *dust.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*poena*], *punish.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe, reckon.* Cf. reor.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *seek, ask, inquire.* (422.)

quaesō (-ere), (*used only in ind. pres. 1st sing. and plur.*), [*quaerō*], *beg, pray.*

quam, adv. *than.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [*quam*],

how great, how much ; as great as, as much as.

quā-rē, adv. (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore*.

qua-si, adv. *as if*.

quater, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times*.

quattuor, num. adj., indecl. *four*.

-que, conj., enclitic, *and*. Cf. *et*, *atque*, and *ac*.

quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron. *who, which, what, that*. (110.)

quia, conj. *because*. Cf. *quod*.

quīdam, quaedam, quod- or quid-
dam, indef. pron. *certain, a certain one, a*. (308.)

quidem, adv. (*never the first word*), *indeed, certainly, in truth ; nē . . . quidem, not . . . even*.

quīlibet, quaelibet, quod- or quid-
libet, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, b.)

Quīntilius, -ī, m. *Quintilius*,
family name of Varus.

Quīnticius, -ī, m. *Quinctius*, *family name of Cincinnatus*.

quīndecim, num. adj., indecl. *fifteen*.

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque], *fifty*.

quīnque, num. adj., indecl. *five*.

quis or **quī**, quae, quid or quod, interrog. pron. and adj. *who ? which ? what ?* (105.)

quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any, any one (at all)*. (308, b.)

quisque, quaeque, quid- or quod-
que, indef. pron. *each one, each, every*. (308, b.)

quī-vīs, quaevis, quod- or quidvis, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, b.)

quō, adv. [quī], *whither, where*.

quod, conj. *because*. Cf. *quia*.

quoque, conj. (after an emphatic word), *also, too*.

quot, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl. *how many ? as many as*.

quot-annis, adv. *every year, yearly*.

Racilia, -ae, f. *Racilia*.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize and carry off ; snatch, drag*.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *take back, receive, recover*. Sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat, be-take one's self*.

re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [creō], *make*, *refresh, recreate*.

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse*.

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [re], *give back, return*.

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [re(d)], *go back, return*. (520.)

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back, bring back*. REDUCE.

rēgīna, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnum, rēx], *be king ; rule, reign*.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēgnō, rēx], *kingdom, throne*.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], *rule*. REGENT.

re-liquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctus, *leave behind, leave, abandon*. RELINQUISH.

re-mittō, -erē, -mīsī, -mīssus, *send back, give up*. REMIT.

rēmus, -ī, m. *oar*.

re-nuō, -ere, -uī, —, *nod backward; deny, refuse*.

reor, rērī, rātus sum, *reckon, think*. Cf. putō.

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus [pariō, *procure*], *find, discover, ascertain*.

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, gain*. Cf. referō.
REPORT.

re-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*count over*), *reckon, think over*.

rēs, reī, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (258); rēs pūblica, *republic, state, commonwealth*.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [speciō], *look back*.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond*.

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō, *place*], *replace, restore*.

re-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, —, *come back, return*.

re-vertor, -ī, -ī, -sus (*deponent in pres., imp., and fut.*), *turn back, return*. REVERT.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall; revoke*.

rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king*. (126.) REGAL.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine*.

rictus, -ūs, m. [ringor, *open the mouth*], *jaws wide open, jaws*.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh*. Cf. cachinnō. DERIDE.

rōbur, -oris, n. *oak; strength*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question*.

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -ī, m. [Rōma], *a Roman*.

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus, first king of Rome*.

rosa, -ae, f. *rose*.

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak of a vessel*. ROSTRUM.

Page 39.

rūrī (loc. of rūs), *in the country*.

rūs, rūris, n. *the country*. (269, a.)

rūsticus, -ī, m. [rūs], *countryman, peasant*. RUSTIC.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines*.

saepe, adv. *often, frequently*.

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety, welfare*.

SALUTARY.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*.

schola, -ae, f. *school*.

scientia, -ae, f. [sciō], *knowledge, skill*.

sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus, *know, know how*. SCIENCE.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio, a famous Roman general*. Page 55.

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*. SCRIPTURE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer, author*.

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield*. Page 76.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second*.

sed, conj. *but*. Cf. autem.

sēmentis, -is, f. *a sowing*.

semper, adv. *always, ever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate.*

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age.*

senex, senis, adj. *old*; noun, *old man.* (211, 499.) SENILE.

sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion; purpose.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.*

septem, num. adj., indecl. *seven.*

septen-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *seventeen.*

septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septuāgintā], *seventieth.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

sermō, -ōnis, m. *speech, conversation.* SERMON.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow.*

serta, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers.*

sērus, -a, -um, adj. *late.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep, preserve.*

servus, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave, servant.*

sex, num. adj., indecl. *six.*

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty.*

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth.*

Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus, a Roman first name.*

sī, conj. *if, whether.*

sīc, adv. *so, thus.* Cf. adeō, ita, and tam.

Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily.*

sīgnum, -ī, n. *mark, sign, signal.*

Page 105.

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest.* SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling, similar.* (198.)

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time, one on each side, single, separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left (hand).* SINISTER.

Sōcratēs, -is, m. *Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher.*

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plur.), *sun.* SOLAR.

Sōl, Sōlis, m. *the Sun-god.*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed, be wont.* (362, a.)

solitus, -a, -um, adj. [soleō], *usual, customary.*

sōlum, adv. [sōlus], *alone, only.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, single; sole.* (291.)

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen; break.* SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep.*

spargō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *strew, scatter.* SPARSE.

spatium, -ī, n. *room, space.*

speciēs (-ēī), f. *sight, appearance, pretense.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [speciō, *look*], *look at, behold, witness.*

SPECTACLE.

speculum, -ī, n. *looking-glass, mirror.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, speī, f. [spērō], *hope.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

statim, adv. [stō], *(standing*

there), on the spot, immediately, at once.

statua, -ae, f. [statuō, *set*], (*the thing set up*), **statue**.

statūra, -ae, f. [stō], **stature**.

status, -ūs, m. [stō], **station**, *position, condition*.

stō, stāre, stetī, **status**, **stand**.

strepitus, -ūs, m. *din, applause*.

stringō, -ere, strinxī, **strictus**, *draw tight; draw*.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, — [studium], *be eager, strive earnestly, study*.

studium, -ī, n. [studeō], **zeal**, *eagerness; study*.

stultus, -a, -um, adj. **foolish**.

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under, up to*.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under or up to, enter; undergo*. (520.)

subitō, adv. [subitus], **suddenly**, *unexpectedly*.

subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō], **sudden**.

sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssus, *let down; let grow*.

sub-siliō, -īre, -uī, — [saliō, *leap*], *jump up*.

sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (*come to one's relief*), **help, aid, assist**.

suc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [sub], (*run up to*), **help, aid, succor**.

sūdor, -ōris, m. **sweat**.

suī, reflex. pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)*. (245.)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist*. (516.)

summus, -a, -um, adj. **highest, greatest**. (199.) CONSUMMATE.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up; assume*.

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon*.

super-iaciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw over, cast upon*.

superior, -ius, adj. **higher, superior**. (199.)

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [super], *pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer*.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *be over, be left over; survive*. (516.)

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super], **above**. (199.)

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [supplicō, *kneel down*], **supplication; thanksgiving**.

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. **last**. (199.)

sus-pendō, -ere, -dī, -pēnsus [sub, *pendō, hang*], *hang up, hang, suspend*.

su-spīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum [su-spiciō, *look askance at*], **suspect, mistrust**.

sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub, *teneō, hold up, bear, endure*]; **sustain**.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. reflex. [suī], *his, her, hers, its, theirs, their*. (247.)

T., abbreviation of **Titus**.

talentum, -ī, n. **talent, a sum of money** (§1132). [ita, and sic.

tam, adv. *so, so much*. Cf adeō,

tamen, adv. *yet, but, nevertheless*.

tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally*.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, **touch**.

TANGENT.

tantum, adv. [tantus], *only*.

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such*.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *delay, hinder*.

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*.

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon*.

temerē, adv. *rashly, inconsiderately*.

templum, -ī, n. *temple*. Page 93.

tempus, -oris, n. *time*. TEMPORAL.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *hold, keep, have*.

tener, -era, -erum, adj. *soft, delicate, tender*.

tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *try, attempt*.

ter, num. adv. [trēs], *three times, thrice*.

Terentia, -ae, f. *Terentia, Cicero's wife*.

tergum, -ī, n. *back*.

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [trēs], *three each, three on each side, three*.

terra, -ae, f. *earth, land*. TERRACE.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.

terrestris, -e, adj. [terra], *of the land, land*. TERRESTRIAL.

territus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of terreō], *frightened*.

terror, -ōris, m. [terreō], *terror, alarm*.

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.

testūdō, -inis, f. [testa, shell], *tortoise; shed or covering to protect besiegers, testudo*. Page 148.

Themistoclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

Tiberis, -is, m. (acc. in -im), *the Tiber*.

Tiberius, -ī, m. *Tiberius, a Roman first name*.

tībicen, -inis, m. [tibia, pipe, canō, sing], *pipér*.

Ticīnus, -ī, m. *the Ticinus, a river of Italy*.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of*. TIMID.

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus, a Roman first name*.

toga, -ae, f. *toga*. Page 191.

togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga], *clad in the toga*.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bear, endure*. TOLERATE.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, pick up*.

tōnsor, -ōris, m. [tondeō, shear], *barber*.

tot, adj., indecl. *so many*. Cf. quot.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj. *whole, all, entire*. (291.) TOTAL.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *draw, drag*.

trā-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [trāns, iaciō], *throw across, pierce*.

Trallēs, -ium, f. *Tralles, a town in Asia*.

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj. *calm, tranquil*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over, the other side of*.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross*. (520.) TRANSIENT.

trans-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [agō], *drive through; finish, transact*.

tre-decim, num. adj. [trēs, decem], *thirteen*.

tremō, -ere, -uī, —, *shake, tremble.*

trēs, tria, num. adj. *three.* (284.)

trigeminī, -ōrum, m. *triplets.*

trigintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty.*

trīstis, -e, adj. *sad, gloomy.*

triumphālis, -e, adj. [triumphus], *triumphal, having enjoyed a triumph.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph.*

triumphus, -ī, m. [triumpho], *triumph.*

trucīdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *kill.*

tū, pers. pron. *thou, you.* (245.)

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.* (19.) Page 13.

tubicen, -inis, m. [tuba, canō, *sing*], *trumpeter.*

tugurium, -ī, n. *hut, cottage.*

Tullus Hostilius, -ī, m. *Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.*

tum, adv. *at that time, then.*

tumultus, -ūs, m. *uproar, confusion, tumult.*

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then.*

turpis, -e, adj. *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one person). (247.)

ubi, adv. *where, when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, dimin. of ūnus], *any, any one.* (291.)

ūlterior, -ius, adj. (no positive), *further.* (200.)

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last.* (200.) ULTIMATE.

umbra, -ae, f. *shade.* UMBRELLA.

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder.*

unde, adv. *whence.*

undique, adv. *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus], *only.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. *one; alone.* (284.)

urbs, -is, f. *city.* (152.) SUB-URBS.

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, benefit.*

ut or utī, adv. and conj. *how, as, when; that, in order that, so that.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two)?* (291.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both.* (291.)

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous.* UTILITY.

uti-nam, adv. *would that! O that! I wish that.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ;* w. abl. (361.)

utrimque, adv. *on both sides.*

ūva, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, vacant, destitute.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be in good health; valē, farewell, good-bye.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy.* VALID.

Vārus, -ī, m. *Varus, one of Augustus's generals.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vāstus, *waste, desolate*], *lay waste, ravage*.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, *carry, draw, convey*; pass. *ride*. VEHICULE.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx], *swiftness, velocity*.

vel-ut, adv. *just as*.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, *hunt*], *hunter*.

venēnum, -ī, n. *poison*. VENOM.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come*.

ventus, -ī, m. *wind*.

venustus, -a, -um, adj. *charming, beautiful, graceful*.

vēr, vēris, n. *spring*. VERNAL.

verbum, -ī, n. *word*. VERB.

Vergilius, -ī, m. *Vergil, a famous Roman poet*.

vērītās, -ātis, f. [vērus], *truth, verity*.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, change*.

vērus, -a, -um, adj. *true, real*.

Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta, a goddess*.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *your, yours* (of more than one person). (247.)

vestimentum, -ī, n. [vestiō], *clothing*.

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [vestis, *garment*], *clothe*.

vetus, -eris, adj. *old*. (175, 207, 211.) VETERAN.

vēxillum, -ī, n. *signal-flag*.

via, -ae, f. *way, road, street*.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus, *village*], *near, neighboring*; as a noun, *neighbor*. VICINITY.

vīctor, -ōris, m. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor*. (138.)

Vīctōria, -ae, f. *Victoria*.

vīctōria, -ae, f. [vīctor], *victory*.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive*; pass. *be seen, seem*. VISION.

vīgintī, num. adj., indecl. *twenty*.

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vinctus, *bind*.

vīncō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus, *conquer, defeat*.

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*.

vir, virī, m. *man, hero*. (57, 141.)

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir], *manliness, courage, bravery; virtue*.

vīs, vīs, f. (gen. and dat. rare), *strength, power*. (499.)

vīta, -ae, f. [vīvō], *life*; vītam agō, *pass life*. VITAL.

vītis, -is, f. *vine*.

vitium, -ī, n. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish, vice*. Cf. culpa.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, *blame, censure*. Cf. culpō. VITUPERATION.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, —, *live*. Cf. habitō and incolō. VIVID.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive, living*.

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty*.

vōci-feror, -ārī, -ātus sum [vōx, ferō], *cry out, exclaim; vociferate*.

vocō, -āre, āvī, -ātus [vōx], *call*.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing, desire, intend*. (519.)

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly*.

Volscī, -ōrum, the *Volscians*.

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment*.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, promise solemnly*.

vōx, vōcis, f. [vocō], *voice*,
word.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vulnus],
wound, hurt, injure. VULNER-
ABLE.

vulnus, -eris, n. [vulnerō], *wound*.

vulpēs, -is, f. *fox*.

vultus, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks*,
features.

Zama, -ae, f. *Zama*, a town in
Africa.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

For the principal parts of verbs and other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary or to the special vocabularies.

- a**, art., commonly not translated;
quidam, *quaedam*, *quoddam*
(quiddam) (308).
abandon, *relinquō*, 3.
able (be), *possum* (296, *a*, 517).
about, *dē*, *w. abl.*
absent (be), *absum* (516).
abundance, *cōpia*, -ae, *f.*
abuse, *abūtor*, 3, *w. abl.*
accept, *accipio*, 3.
account of (on), *abl. of cause.*
accuse, *accūsō*, 1.
accustomed (be), *soleō*, 2 (362).
address, *cōtīōnor*, 1.
admonish, *moneō*, 2 (512).
adorn, *ōrnō*, 1.
advice, *cōnsilium*, -ī, *n.*
advise, *moneō*, 2 (512).
Africa, *Āfrica*, -ae, *f.*
Africanus, *Āfricānus*, -ī, *m.*
after, *post*, *w. acc.*; *cum*, *w. subj.*;
sometimes implied in participle.
afterwards, *postea*, *deinde*.
aid, *iuvō*, 1.
alarm, *n. terror*, -ōris, *m.*
alarm, *v. terreō*, 2. **alas!** *ēheu!*
Alexander, *Alexander*, -drī, *m.*
all, *omnis*, -e; *tōtus*, -a, -um (292).
alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um; *ūnus*, -a,
-um (291).
also, *quoque*.
altar, *āra*, -ae, *f.*
although, *cum*.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *lēgātus*, -ī, *m.*
ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um; *vetus*,
-eris (175, 207).
and, *et*; *atque*, *or āc*; -que.
anger, *īra*, -ae, *f.*
animal, *animal*, -ālis, *n.* (148).
another, *alius*, -a, -ud (292).
any, *ūllus*, -a, -um (291); *aliquis*,
-qua, -quid, *or* -quod (308);
quisquam, —, *quidquam*
(308, *b*); *quīvis* (308, *b*).
arm, *armō*, 1.
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, *n.*
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m.*
around, *circum*, *w. acc.*
arouse, *incitō*, 1.
Arpinum, *Arpīnum*, -ī, *n.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, ut.

as to, ut.

Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*

ask, interrogō, 1; (for), quaerō, 3.

assault, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*

assault, *v.* oppugnō, 1.

at, in, *w. acc. or abl*; in combination *w. verbs* (*wonder at*, etc.), see the verbs; *w. names of towns*, locative case (180).

at once, statim.

attack, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*

attack, *v.* oppugnō, 1.

away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.

away from, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; ē or ex, *w. abl.*

back (bring or carry), referō (521); reportō, 1.

bad, malus, -a, -um (207).

band, manus, -ūs, *f.*

barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*

battle, pūgna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*

be, sum (516).

beak (of a ship), rōstrum, -ī, *n.*

bear, ferō (521); portō, 1; tolerō, 1; (off), abdūcō, 3; auferō (521).

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

because, quod; quia.

become, fiō (520).

before, ante, *w. acc.*

begin, incipiō, 3; ineō (521).

Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*

believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*

benefit, prōsum (518), *w. dat.*

besiege, obsideō, 2; oppugnō, 1.

best, optimus, -a, -um (207).

better, melior, -us (207).

between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, 2.

big, māgnus, -a, -um.

bind, vinciō, 4.

bird, avis, -is, *f.* (148, *c*).

black, niger, -gra, -grum.

blame, culpa, -ae, *f.*

boat, cymba, -ae, *f.*

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

boldly, cum audāciā.

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

born (be), nāscor, 3.

both (*each of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque (200); *both . . . and*, et . . . et.

bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.* (231).

boy, puer, -erī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte.

bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*; virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

bring, portō, 1; ferō (521); together), cōferō; (up), ēducō, 1; (back), reportō, 1.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

build, aedificō, 1.

building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*

but, at; autem; sed.

by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; denoting means or instrument, *abl. alone*; sometimes implied in participle.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1; (together), convocō, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*

can, possum (296, *a*, 517).

captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*

capture, capiō, 3.

Capua, Capua, -ae, *f.*

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

carefully, cum cūrā.

carry, portō, 1; ferō (521); (away, off), auferō, abducō; (back), referō; *carry on war*, bellum gerō.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -ī, *m.*

cause, praebeō, 2.

cavalry, equitatus, -ūs, *m.*

certain, (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (308); (= *sure*), certus, -a, -um.

change, mūtō, 1.

chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*

children, puerī, -ōrum, *m.*; liberī, -ōrum, *m.* (61).

Christ, Christus, -ī, *m.*

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*

circumstance, rēs, rei, *f.* (258).

citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.* and *f.*

city, urbs, -is, *f.*

close at hand, prope.

clothe, vestiō, 4.

cold, frīgus, -oris, *n.*

come, veniō, 4; (back), reveniō, 4; (out), ēmergō, 3; (together), conveniō, 4.

command, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; iubeō, 2, *w. acc.*; praesum (516), *w. dat.*

commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*

companion, comes, -itis, *m.* and *f.*

comrade, comes, -itis, *m.* and *f.*

conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.

consul, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*

corn, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*

correct, corrigō, 3.

country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*

country people, rūsticī, -ōrum, *m.*

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

course, iter, itineris, *n.* (499).

creature, bēstia, -ae, *f.*

cross, trānseō (520).

cultivate, colō, 3.

cup, pōculum, -ī, *n.*

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*

dare, audeō, 2 (362).

daring, audācia, -ae, *f.*

daringly, cum audāciā.

Darius, Dārēus, -ī, *m.*

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.* (p. 13, n. 5).

day, diēs, -ēī, *m.* and *f.* (258).

daybreak (at), primā lūce.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

deck, ōrnō, 1.

decree, dēcernō, 3.

deep, altus, -a, -um.

deer, cerva, -ae, *f.*

defeat, vincō, 3; superō, 1.

defend, dēfendō, 3.

delay, mora, -ae, *f.*

delight, dēlectō, 1.

Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m.*

depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (520).

deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

desire, volō (519); cupiō, 3.

despatch, litterae, -ārum, *f.*

destroy, dēleō, 2.

die, morior, 3.

difficult, difficilis, -e (198).

difficulty (with), vix.

diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*

diligent, diligēns, -entis.

diligently, diligenter; cum diligentiā.

disgraceful, turpis, -e.

do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.

dove, columba, -ae, *f*.

draw up, instruō, 3.

drive, agō, 3; agitō, 1.

Duilius, Duilius, -ī, *m*.

during, (= amid) inter.

duty, mūnus, -eris, *n*.

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (308, *b*); (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (291).

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.

eagerly, cum studiō.

eagerness, studium, -ī, *n*.

earth, terra, -ae, *f*.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e (198).

educate, educō, 1.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.

elder, senior, -ius (207).

encourage, cohortor, 1.

end, finis, -is, *m*. (148, *c*).

endure, tolerō, 1.

enemy, hostis, -is, *m*. and *f*.; inimicus, -ī, *m*. (149).

enjoy, fruor, 3, *w. abl*.

Ennius, Ennius, -ī, *m*.

enter, ineō (520).

equal, pār, paris.

escape, sē ēripere.

especially, māximē.

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f*.

even, etiam; ipse (304, *g*).

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, *m*.

fact, rēs, rei, *f*. (258).

fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

faithfully, fidēliter.

famous, clārus, -a, -um.

far, longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.

father, pater, -tris, *m*.

fault, vitium, -ī, *n*.; culpa, -ae, *f*.; find fault with, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.

favor, faveō, 2, *w. dat*.

fear, *n*. terror, -ōris, *m*.

fear, *v*. timeō, 2.

few, paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agrī, *m*.; in the field, militiae (*loc*).

fight, pūgnō, 1; dimicō, 1.

fill up, compleō, 2.

find, reperīō, 4.

fine, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

finish, cōnficiō, 3.

fire, ignis, -is, *m*.

firmness, cōstantia, -ae, *f*.

first, primus, -a, -um.

five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.

flee, fugiō, 3.

flight, fuga, -ae, *f*.

flower, flōs, flōris, *m*.

follow, sequor, 3.

fond of (be), amō, 1.

food, cibus, -ī, *m*.

foot, pēs, pedis, *m*.

foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m*.

for, conj. nam.

for, sign of dative; prep., dē, prō, *w. abl*.; of time, space, purpose, in, *w. acc*.

force, manus, -ūs, *f*.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f*.

foresight, prūdētia, -ae, *f*.

forever, semper.

form, faciō, 3.

former (the), ille (100, *c*).
 fortify, mūniō, 4.
 fortune, fōrtūna, -ae, *f*.
 forum, forum, -ī, *n*.
 forward (go), prōcēdō, 3; prō-
 gredior, 3.
 free, liber, -era, -erum.
 friend, amīcus, -ī, *m*.
 friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
 frighten, terreō, 2.
 frightened, territus, -a, -um.
 from, dē, *w. abl.*; away from, ā
 or ab, *w. abl.*; out of, ē or ex,
w. abl.
 furnish, praebeō, 2.
 further, ūterior, -ius (200).

 gain, reportō, 1.
 Galba, Galba, -ae, *m*.
 garden, hortus, -ī, *m*.
 gate, porta, -ae, *f*.
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f*.
 Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m*.
 general, dux, ducis, *m. and f.*;
 imperātor, -ōris, *m*.
 Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m*.
 get (possession of), potior, 4, *w.*
abl.; (ready), parō, 1.
 gift, dōnum, -ī, *n*.
 girl, puella, -ae, *f*.
 give, dō, 1.
 glad, laetus, -a, -um.
 go, eō (520); (forth, out), exeō;
 (off, away), abeō; discēdō, 3;
 (on, forward), prōgredior, 3;
 (up to), subeō.
 god, deus, -ī, *m*. (499).
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f*. (p. 13, *n*. 5).
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n*.
 golden, aureus, -a, -um.
 good, bonus, -a, -um (500).

good-bye, valē, valēte.
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n*.
 grant, dō, 1.
 great, māgnus, -a, -um (207);
 ingēns, -entis.
 greatest, summus, -a, -um (199).
 greatly, māximē.
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f*.
 Greek (a), Graecus, -ī, *m*.
 ground (on the), humī (*loc.*).
 guard, custōdiō, 4.

 hand, manus, -ūs, *f*.
 handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
 Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m*.
 happen, accidō, 3.
 harbor, portus, -ūs (231).
 harm (do), noceō, 2; obsum (395);
w. dat.
 hasten, properō, 1.
 have, habeō, 2.
 he, is (119); hīc (100); ille (100).
 head, caput, -itis, *n*. (126); *be at*
the head of, praesum (516).
 health, valētūdō, -inis, *f*.
 health (be in good), valeō, 2.
 hear, audiō, 4 (515).
 heavy, gravis, -e.
 helmet, galea, -ae, *f*.
 help, iuvō, 1.
 Helvetia, Helvētia, -ae, *f*.
 Helvetians (the), Helvētīi, -ōrum,
m.
 Henna, Henna, -ae, *f*.
 her, ēius (119); illīus (100); *re-*
flexive, suus, -a, -um (248, *b*).
 hero, vir, virī, *m*. (141).
 hesitate, dubitō, 1.
 hide, lateō, 2.
 high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a,
 -um (199).

- highest**, summus, -a, -um (199).
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, *see* self.
his, eius (119); illius (100); *re-flexive*, suus, -a, -um (248, *b*).
history, historia, -ae, *f.*
hither, citerior, -ius (200).
hold, habeo, 2; teneo, 2; continueo, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499); at home, domi.
hope, *n.* spēs, -ei, *f.*
hope, *v.* spero, 1.
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.* (230).
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, horse-soldier, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499).
hundred, centum.
hunter, venātōr, -ōris, *m.*
hurt, noceo, 2, *w. dat.*

I, ego (245).
if, si; *if not*, nisi.
ill, adv. male (215).
in, in, *w. abl.*
incite, incito, 1.
increase, augeo, 2.
industriously, cum diligentia.
industry, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m.*; peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
Infernals (the), inferi, -ōrum, *m.*
inform, certiorem facio.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*
injure, noceo, 2; obsum (516); *w. dat.*
into, in, *w. acc.*
island, insula, -ae, *f.*

it, is, ea, id (119); hic, ille (100)
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
itself, *see* self.

javelin, pilum, -ī, *n.*
jewel, ornāmentum, -ī, *n.*
joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*
joyfully, cum gaudio.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (499).
just, iustus, -a, -um.

keep, habeo, 2; teneo, 2.
keep off, arceo, 2.
kill, neco, 1; interficio, 3.
king, rex, regis, *m.*
know, scio, 4; (not), nescio, 4.
known, notus, -a, -um.

Labienus, Labienus, -ī, *m.*
labor, *n.* labor, -ōris, *m.*
labor, *v.* laboro, 1.
lack, dēsum (516); careo, 2.
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um (207).
last, supremus, -a, -um (199); ultimus, -a, -um (209).
latter (the), hic, haec, hoc (100, *e*).
laugh, rideo, 2; (aloud), cachinnō, 1.
laziness, pigritia, -ae, *f.*
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūco, 3; (out, forth, off), edūco, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*; princeps, -ipis, *m.*
leaf, folium, -ī, *n.*
learn, discō, 3.
left (hand), sinister, -tra, -trum.
legate, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
legion, legio, -ōnis, *f.*
let, sign of subj. or imperative.

- letter**, epistula, -ae, *f.*; litterae, -ārum, *f.*
lie (= *recline*), iaceō, 2.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light; *adj.* levis, -e.
light, *n.* lūx, lūcis, *f.*
like, similis, -e (198).
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vivō, 3; habitō, 1.
long, longus, -a, -um; *for a long time*, long, diū.
look (at), spectō, 1; (*out for*), cūrō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (511).
lower, inferior, -ius (199).
luckily, fēliciter.

maiden, maid, puella, -ae, *f.* (*servant*), ancilla, -ae, *f.*
make, faciō, 3.
man, vir, virī, *m.* (57); homō, -inis, *m.* (141).
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itinēris, *n.* (499).
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, -ī, *m.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magister, -trī, *m.* (61).
mean, habēō in animō.
means (*by means of*), *use abl.*
meantime (*in the*), interim.
meanwhile, interim.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, *m.*
merry, laetus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*
mine, meus, -a, -um (247).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, *f.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more, plūs (208); magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (207).
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
mourn, lūgēō, 2.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (207).
multitude, multitudō, -inis, *f.*
Muse, Mūsa, -ae, *f.*
must, *expressed by gerundive*.
my, meus, -a, -um (247).

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
Nasica, Nāsica, -ae, *m.*
near, *ad, w. acc.*; prope, *w. acc.*
near by, at hand, prope.
nearer, propior, -ius (200).
neighbor, vicīnus, -ī, *m.*
neither, neque.
neither (of two), neuter, -tra, -trum (291).
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, posterus, -a, -um; postrēmus, -a, -um (199).
nibble, carpō, 3.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
Nile (the), Nīlus, -ī, *m.*
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nullus, -a, -um (291).
nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, *m.* and *f.*; *that no one (neg. purpose)*, nē quis.
no longer, iam, *w. neg.*
nor, neque.

not, nōn; nē.

nothing, nihil, *indecl.*

now, nunc; iam.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*

obey, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*

of, *sign of genitive*; dē, *w. abl.*;

out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

offer, *n.* prōpositum, -ī, *n.*

offer, *v.* prōpōnō, 3.

often, saepe.

Oh! O.

old, antiquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris
(175, 206, 211); (man), senex,
senis (499).

on, in, *w. abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*

once (upon a time), ōlim.

one, ūnus, -a, -um (284); *one . . .*
another, alius . . . alius; *the one*
. . . the other, alter . . . alter.

only, tantum.

open, aperiō, 4.

order, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; iubeō,
2, *w. acc.*; *in order to*, ut, *w.*
subj.

other, alius, -a, -ud (292); *some*
. . . others, aliī . . . aliī; (*of*
two), alter, -era, -erum.

ought, dēbeō, 2; *gerundive*.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

ourselves, *see self*. [the verbs.

out, in combination w. verbs, *see*

out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*

overcome, vincō, 3; superō, 1.

overwhelm, superō, 1.

own (his, her, their), suus, -a,
-um; (my), meus, -a, -um; (our),
noster, -tra, -trum; (your),
vester, -tra, -trum; (thy), tuus,
-a, -um (247).

parent, parēns, -entis, *m.* and *f.*

Parmenio, Parmeniō, -ōnis, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.* [entiā.

patiently, patienter; cum pati-

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

peasant, rūsticus, -ī, *m.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

perform, fungor, 3, *w. abl.*

peril, periculum, -ī, *n.*

permit, permittō, 3, *w. dat.*

persuade, persuādeō, 2, *w. dat.*

physician, medicus, -ī, *m.*

pitch (camp), pōnō, 3.

place, locus, -ī, *m.* (242); in
that place, ibi.

plain, plānitēs, -ēī, *f.*

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.

please, placeō, 2, *w. dat.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plough, *n.* arātrum, -ī, *n.*

plough, *v.* arō, 1.

pluck, carpō, 3.

Pluto, Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*

Po (the), Padus, -ī, *m.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*

poor, miser, -era, -erum.

praise, *n.* laus, laudis, *f.*

praise, *v.* laudō, 1.

prefer, mālō (519).

present (be), adsum (516), *w. dat*

presently, mox.

preserve, cōservō, 1.

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

Proserpine, Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*

protect, tegō, 3.

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prudence, prūdētia, -ae, *f.*

prudent, prūdēns, -entis.

punish, pūniō, 4.

punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*

purpose (*for the purpose of*), ut
or quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund*
or *gerundive*; causā, *w. gerund*
or *gerundive*; *supine*.

put, pōnō, 3; (*to death*), inter-
ficiō, 3; (*to flight*), fugō, 1.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

question, interrogō, 1.

rather, *comp. degree*; *wish rather*,
mālō (519).

read, legō, 3.

receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3;
excipiō, 3.

refresh, recreō, 1.

reign, rēgnō, 1.

rejoice, gaudeō, 2.

remain, maneō, 2.

remove (= *emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.

render, praebeō, 2.

renown, fāma, -ae, *f.*; glōria, -ae, *f.*

reply, respondeō, 2.

return, redeō (520); revertor, 3.

reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*

riches, divitiae, -ārum, *f.*

right (hand), dexter, -tra, -trum.

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, via, -ae, *f.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*

rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*

rout, fugō, 1.

rule, *n.* imperium, -ī, *n.*

rule, *v.* regō, 3 (513); rēgnō, 1.

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*

sad, tristis, -e; maestus, -a, -um.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*

sake (*for the sake*), causā, *w. gen*

same, idem, eadem, idem (303).

save, servō, 1; cōservō, 1.

say, dīcō, 3; inquit.

Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*

sea, mare, -is, *n.*

second, secundus, -a, -um.

see, videō, 2.

seem, videor, 2.

seize, occupō, 1.

self, ipse, -a, -um (303); suī (245).

senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, 3.

servant, servus, -ī, *m.*

set (out), proficīscor, 3; (free),
liberō, 1.

seventeen, septendecim.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*

shake, agitō, 1.

share, dispertiō, 4.

she, ea (119, *c*); haec, illa (100, *f*).

shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f.* (149).

short, brevis, -e.

shrewd, ācer, -cris, -cre.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side (*on the other side of*), trāns,
w. acc.

since, cum, *w. subj.*; sometimes
implied in participle.

sixth, sextus, -a, -um.

sixty, sexāgintā.

size, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*

skill, scientia, -ae, *f.*

skillful, skilled, perītus, -a, -um.

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.

sleep, somnus, -ī, *m.*

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, ita; tam; (**great**), tantus, -a, -um; (**that**), ut; (**as not to**), ut nōn; nē.

soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*

some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid, -quod (308); quīdam, quaedam, quod- or quiddam; *some . . . others*, aliī . . . aliī; (*of two parties*), alterī . . . alterī; often not expressed.

something, aliquid.

sometimes, interdum.

son, filius, -ī, *m.* (495).

soon, mox.

source, fōns, fontis, *m.*

sowing, sēmentis, -is, *f.*

space, spatium, -ī, *n.*

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*

spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*

speedily, cum celeritāte, celeriter.

spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*

spirited, ācer, -cris, -cre.

spur, calcar, -āris, *n.*

state, cīvitas, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*

statue, statua, -ae, *f.*

stature, statūra, -ae, *f.*; māgnitūdō corporis.

stay, maneō, 2.

stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*

story, fābula, -ae, *f.*

still, *adv.* tamen.

strange, mīrābilis, -e.

street, via, -ae, *f.*

strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.

sturdy, validus, -a, -um.

subdue, pācō, 1.

successfully, optimē; fēliciter.

suddenly, subitō.

suffer, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.

summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*

sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

superior, superior, -ius (199).

sure (be), fac, facite, *w. ut.*

surpass, superō, 1.

survive, supersum (516).

swiftly, celeriter.

sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*

take, capiō, 3; occupō, 1; sūmō, -3; (**by storm**), expūgnō, 1.

talent, talentum, -ī, *n.*

tale, fābula, -ae, *f.*

tall, altus, -a, -um.

task, pēsum, -ī, *n.*

taste, gustō, 1.

tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, 3.

temple, templum, -ī, *n.*

ten, decem.

tender, tener, -era, -erum.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

terrify, terreō, 2.

territories, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*

terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*

testudo, testūdō, -inis, *f.*

than, quam; *abl.* (194).

thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

that, *conj.* (*in purpose or result clauses*), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (**not**), nē; ut nōn; (*after verbs of fearing*), ut; (*after verbs of saying and the like*), not translated.

that, *demon. pron.*, is, ea, id (119); ille, -a, -ud (100); iste, -a, -ud (303); *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod (110). [ea, id (119).

the, commonly not expressed; **is**, **their**, *gen. plur. of is*; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (247).

themselves, *see* self.

then, tum.

there, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.

therefore, igitur.

thing, rēs, rei, *f.*; sometimes omitted.

think, putō, 1.

thirteen, tredecim.

thirty, trīgintā.

this, is, ea, id (119); hīc, haec, hōc (100).

though, cum, *w. subj.*; sometimes implied in participle.

thousand, mille (284, *d'*).

three, trēs, tria (284).

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

through, per, *w. acc.*

throw, iaciō, 3.

thus, ita.

Ticinus (the), Ticīnus, -ī, *m.*

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, *sign of dative*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; (*expressing purpose*), ut, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund or gerundive*; causā, *w. gerund or gerundive*; *supine*.

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum, *w. abl.*

toil, labōrō, 1.

touch, tangō, 3.

towards, ad, in, *w. acc.*

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

townsman, oppidānus, ī, *m.*

train, educō, 1.

triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

true, vērus, -a, -um.

trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*

trumpeter, tubicen, -inis, *m.*

trust, fidō, 3 (363).

try, tentō, 1.

turn, flectō, 3.

twenty, vīgintī.

two, duo, -ae, -o; (*which of*), uter, -tra, -trum; (*each of*), uterque, utraque, utrumque.

under, sub, *w. acc. and abl.*

undergo, subeō. (520).

unknown, incōgnitus, -a, -um.

unlike, dissimilis, -e (198).

unwilling (be), nōlō (519).

up, in combination w. verbs, *see* the verbs.

upon, in, *w. acc. or abl.*

use, ūtor, 3; *w. abl.*

useful, ūtilis, -e.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

vanquish, vincō, 3.

vehemently, graviter.

Vergil, Vergilius, -ī, *m.*

very, *superl. degree*; ipse, -a, -um.

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

vine, vītis, -is, *f.*

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage (war), gerō, 3.

walk (= *take a walk*), ambulō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; moenia, -ium, *n.*

wander through, peragrō, 1.

want (= *wish*), volō (519); (= *lack*), careō, 2, *w. abl.*; dēsum

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

warn, moneō, 2.

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*

- way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
 weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
 well, bene (215).
 what, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid
 (quod) (105).
 when, cum, ubi.
 whence, unde.
 where, ubi.
 whether, num.
 which, quī, quae, quod (110); (*of*
two), uter, utra, utrum (291).
 while, dum; sometimes implied
 in participle.
 white, albus, -a, -um.
 whither, quō.
 who, *rel.*, quī, quae (110); *in-*
terrog., quis, quae (105).
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um (291).
 why, cūr.
 wide, lātus, -a, -um.
 wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
 wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*
 willing (be), volō (519).
 win, reportō, 1.
 wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
 wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
 winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n.*
 wisdom, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
 wise, sapiēns, -entis; prūdēns
 -entis.
 wish, volō (519); (not) nōlō
 (519).
 with, cum, *w. abl.*; sometimes
 abl. alone.
 withdraw, discēdō, 3.
 without, sine, *w. abl.* [-eris, *f.*
 woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier,
 wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1.
 wont (be), soleō, 2 (362).
 woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
 word, verbum, -ī, *n.*; vōx, vōcis, *f.*
 work, labōrō, 1.
 world, orbis terrārum.
 worse, pēior, -ius (207).
 would that, utinam.
 wound, *n.* vulnus, -eris, *n.*
 wound, *v.* vulnerō, 1.
 write, scribō, 3.
 writer, scriptor, -ōris, *m.*
 year, annus, -ī, *m.*
 yesterday, herī.
 yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (100, c).
 you, *sing.* tū; *plur.* vōs (245).
 young, iuvenis, -e (207).
 young man, youth, adulēscēns,
 -entis, *m.*; iuvenis, -is, *m.*
 your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*
 vester, -tra, -trum (247).
 yourselves, see *self*.
 youth (body of), iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*
 Zama, Zama, -ae, *f.*
 zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*
 zealously, cum studiō.

INDEX.

A

ā declension of nouns, 14-19.

ā verbs, 71-74, 88-91.

ā and **ab** with ablative of agent, 75, 76.

ablative case, 12.

absolute, 387, 388.

of accompaniment, 241.

of agent, 76, 133, 1.

of cause, 132, 133, 4.

of degree of difference, 209, *a*, 210.

of description, 139, *a*, 140.

of manner, 93, 133, 3.

of means or instrument, 84, 133, 2.

of separation, 412, 413.

of specification, 167, *a*, 168.

of time, 154, *a*, 155.

with prepositions, 405.

with *utor*, *frutor*, etc., 360, 361.

ablative of adjectives of third declension, 163, *c*.

singular of adjectives used as adverbs, 214, *e*.

ābus in dative and ablative of first declension, p. 13, n. 5.

accent, 9.

in contracted genitive of nouns in *ius*, 59.

accusative case, 12.

of extent, 259, *a*, 260.

like nom. in neuter nouns, 126, *c*.

object of transitive verbs, 23.

of place whither, 269.

singular of adjectives as adverb, 214, *d*.

subject of the infinitive, 299.

in indirect discourse, 317-320.

acer, decl., 163, 501; comparison, 191.

adjectives of first and second decl. 49.

of third declension, 163.

irregular (gen. in *ius*), 291, 292.

comparison, 190-194, 198-201, 207, 208; meaning of comparative and superlative, 194, *c*.

declension of comparatives, 192.

irregular comparison, 198-200, 504.

comparison by adverbs, 201.

positive wanting, 200, 504.

interrogative adjectives, 107.

possessives, 247.

predicate, 50, *a*.

with complementary infinitive, 298.

in the plural without a noun, p. 44, n. 2

with nouns: agreement, 53; order, 32, *c*, p. 22, n. 2.

with ablative of accompaniment, 241, *a*.

of description, 139, *a*, 140

of manner, 93.

with dative, 27, *c*.

adverbs, formation, 214.

comparison, 215.

in place of positives of adjectives, 200, 504.

aeger, declension, 500.

agent, answers the question *by whom?* 133, 1.

expressed by ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 76.

with the gerundive, 465, *c*, 466.

ager, declension, 57, 495.

agreement of adjectives, 53.

- appositives, 45.
 predicate nouns, 37.
 relative pronouns, 113.
aliquis, declension, 308, 510.
alius, declension, 292, 502.
alius . . . alius (alii . . . alii), meaning, 292, *a*.
alphabet, 1.
alter . . . alter, meaning, 292, *a*.
altior, declension, 192, 503.
altus, comparison, 191.
amō, conjugation, 511.
animal, declension, 148, 496.
antecedent of relative pronouns, 248.
 of clause of characteristic, 432, *b*.
antepenult, 7, 5; when accented, 9, 2.
appeals, 443, 444.
apposition, 44, 45.
arrangement of words in Latin sentence, 32.
article, none in Latin, 16, *b*.
arx, declension, 152, 496.
audāx, declension, 163, 501; comparison, 191.
audlō, conjugation, 515.
avis, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.

B

- bonī*, as noun, p. 44, n. 2.
bonus, declension, 500; comparison, 207.
bōs, declension, 499.
brevīs, declension, 163, 501; comparison, 191.

C

- calcar*, declension, 148, 496.
caplō, conjugation, 514.
caput, declension, 126, 496.
cardinals, table of, 505.
 indeclinable from *quattuor* to *centum*, 284, *b*.
case of relative pronouns, 113.
cases, names, 12 [see under nominative, genitive, etc.].
causal clauses, with *cum*, 434, 435; relative, 432, 433.

- cause*, expressed by the ablative, 132, 388.
characteristic ablative [see ablative of description], 140.
 relative clauses, 432, 433.
characteristic vowels of the four conjugations, 337.
cīvis, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.
clauses, final, 253, *d*.
 of purpose, 254.
 relative (of purpose, characteristic, etc.), 432, 433.
 with *cum*, *when*, 381, 382.
cliēns, declension, 152, 496.
colloquia: for practice on pronunciation, etc., 11, 26, 41.
Duo pueri, 70.
Frāter et Sorōrcula, 137, 162, 289.
Pater et Filiolus, 79, 219, 367.
Praeceptor et Discipulus, 147, 264.
Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus, 431.
Tityrus et Meliboeus, 416.
commands, 443, 444.
comparative, declined, 192; *plūs*, declined, 208.
 followed by the ablative, 194.
 meaning *too*, 194, *c*.
comparison of adjectives, 190-194, 198-201, 207, 208.
 irregular, 198-201, 207.
 by adverbs, 201.
 six adjectives in *lis*, 198.
 irregular superlatives, 199.
 positive wanting, 200.
 of adverbs, 215.
 ablative of, 194.
compound tenses often omit *est*, p. 106, n. 4.
conditional sentences, 448.
 present and past time with nothing implied, 449, 450.
 contrary to fact, 450, B, 451.
 future time, 451, C, D, 452.
conjugation. See verbs.
cōnsillum, genitive in *ī*, 59; declension, 495.
consonant 1, 2.

- stems, how named, 125.
consonants, 7, 2, 3.
 how pronounced, 6.
cōsul, declension, 138, 496.
contraction in perfect and cognate
 tenses when *v* is lost, 337, *b*.
 in genitive of nouns in *ium* and *ius*,
 59.
 vowel resulting from contraction, 8, 3.
cornu, declension, 230, 497.
corpus, declension, 138, 496.
cum, with abl. of accompaniment, 241.
 with ablative of manner, 93.
 joined to ablative of personal pro-
 nouns, 246, *e*.
 in clauses of time, 381, 382.
 causal and concessive, 432-435.

D

- dative case**, 12.
 of agent, 465, *c*, 466.
 with adjectives, 27, 3.
 with compound verbs, 397.
 with compounds of *sum*, 397, *a*.
 double dative, 399, *a*.
 of indirect object, 28.
 of possession, 29.
 of service, 398, 399.
 with intransitive verbs, 372.
dea, dat. and abl. plural of, p. 13, n. 5.
declension. See *nouns* and *adjectives*.
 of adjectives of first and second de-
 clensions, 49-52.
 of third declension adjectives, 163.
 of comparatives, 192.
degree of difference expressed by the
 ablative, 209, *a*, 210.
demonstrative adjs. and pronouns, 101,
a. See *hic*, *idem*, *ille*, *ipse*, *is*, *iste*.
derivation, 342-350.
descriptive abl. and gen., 139, *a*, 140.
dens, declension, 499.
diēs, declension, 258, 498; gender, 257.
diphthongs, how pronounced, 5; are
 long, 8, 3.
direct statements, 317.
domi as locative, 232.

- domum**, used of place whither, 269, *a*.
domus, declension, 499; gender, 229, 9.
 construction of, 407, *a*, 408.
dōnum, declension, 43, 495.
dūc for *dūce*, p. 86, n.
dum with present ind., p. 87, n. 1.
duo, declension, 284, 502.

E

- ē verbs**, 172-174, 184-187.
ego, declension, 245, 506.
 precedes pronouns of the second per-
 son, p. 96, n. 4.
ēlus compared with *suus*, 248, *b*.
enclitics, 9, 3.
English method of pronunciation, 10.
eō, conjugation, 404, 520.
est often omitted, p. 106, n. 4.
extent of time or space, how expressed,
 259, *a*, 260.

F

- fables**: *Mulier et Gallina*, 481.
Puer Mendāx, 484.
Rūsticus et Canis Fidelis, 483.
Senex et Mors, 485.
Vulpēs et Leō, 486.
Vulpēs et Ūva, 482.
fac for *face*, p. 103, n.
fearful, verbs of, 333.
feminine gender, rule, 13, 2.
ferō, conjugation, 425, 521.
fīlla, declension of, p. 13, n. 5.
fīllus, vocative, 59, 495, *a*.
 declension, 495.
final clauses, 253, *d*.
finis, declined like *ignis*, 148, *c*.
finite verb, p. 10, n.
fīō, conjugation, 425, 520.
formation of words, 342-350.
fruor, followed by the ablative, 361.
fungor, followed by the ablative, 361.
future active participle in intransitive
 verbs, p. 96, n. 1.
 conditions (more and less vivid), 451.
 452.

G

gender, rules, 13.

- of first declension, p. 7.
- of second declension, 42.
- of third declension, 159.
- of fourth declension, 229.
- of fifth declension, 257.

genitive case, 12.

- descriptive, 139, *a*, 140.
- partitive, 203.
- with nouns, 36.

gerund is a verbal noun, 471.

- nominative supplied by the inf., 471.
- use, 472, 474.

gerundive implies necessity, duty, or obligation, 465, *a*.

- takes the dative of agent, 465, *c*, 466.
- used as a verbal adjective, 473, 474.
- used with *ad* to express purpose, 474 *c*.
- used with *sum* to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 464.

gradus, declension, 230, 497.

H

hic, declension, 100, 507.

- how related to *is* and *ille*, 119, *b*.
- as a personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

homō, declension, 138, 496.

- distinguished from *vir*, 141.

hortus, declension, 43, 495.

hostis, declension, 148, 496.

- distinguished from *inimicus*, 149.

I

i with force of a consonant before a vowel, 2.

idem, declension, 303, 507; use, 304, *e, f*.

igitur, postpositive, p. 33, n. 2.

ignis, declension, 148, 496.

ille, declension, 100, 507.

- common uses, 100, *c-f*.
- as personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

imperative in commands, 443, 444.

impersonal use of verbs, 465, *b*.

in with accusative and ablative, 405, *b, c*.

indefinite antecedent of relative clauses of characteristic, 432, *b*.

indirect discourse, 317-320.

model sentences, 317, 319.

rule, 318.

indirect object, case of, 28.

indirect questions, 420, 421.

infinitive, complementary, 297, *b*.

in indirect discourse, 317, 318.

tenses in indirect discourse, 319, 320.

used as in English, 297.

not used to express purpose, 254, *a*.

regarded as a neuter noun, p. 81, n. 3.

takes a subject accusative, 299.

in compound forms *esse* is often omitted, p. 133, n. 1.

inimicus, distinguished from *hostis*, 149.

instrumental ablative, 84.

answers the question *by what?* 133, 2.

interrogative adjectives, 107, *a, b, c*.

pronouns, 105-107; declined, 105, 509.

table of meanings, 106.

review sentences, 117, 118.

words introducing indirect questions, 421, *a, b*.

interrogō, compared with *quaerō*, 422.

Intransitive verbs followed by dative, 372.

iō, verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation, 265-267.

ipse, declension, 303, 507.

used for emphasis, 304, *g*.

distinguished from *sē*, 304, *g*.

irregular adjectives (genitive in *ius*), 291, 292, 502.

comparison: of adjectives, 198-200, 207, 504; of adverbs, 215, *b*.

verbs: *eō*, 404, 520; *ferō* and *fiō*, 425, 520, 521; *possum* and *prosum*, 395, 518; *volō*, *nālō*, *mālō*, 368-370, 519.

is, declension, 119, 507.

common uses, 120.

used as a personal pronoun, 245, *a*.

relation to *hic* and *ille*, 119, *b*.

Iste, declension, 303, 507; uses of, 304, *e, f*.

iter, declension, 499.

Iuppiter, declension, 499.

Iuvenis, comparison, 207.

L

lapis, declension, 130, 496.

liber, declension, 500.

liquids, 3.

liquid stems, 125, 138.

declension, 138, 496.

locative case, 12.

endings, 180, *b*.

in what words used, 180, *a*.

M

mālō, conjugation, 368-370, 519.

malus, comparison, 207.

māgnus, comparison, 207.

manner, how expressed, 92, *a*, 93.

ablative of, answers the question *how* ?
133, *3*.

manus, gender, 229, *a*.

mare, declension, 148, 496.

masculine, rule of gender, 13, *1*.

means, denoted by the ablative, 84.

ablative of, answers the question *by what* ? 83, *a*, 133, *2*.

Mercurius, has a vocative in *i*, 59.

mīles, declension, 126, 496.

mille, declension, 284.

miser, comparison, 191.

moneō, conjugation, 512.

multa, used as a noun, p. 44, n. 2.

multus, comparison, 207.

mute, 3.

followed by a liquid, 8, 5.

mute stems, 125; declension, 126, 130,
496.

N

nē = *that (lest)*, 333, *a*.

as negative of wishes and appeals,
441, *a*; 444, *a*.

-ne, enclitic, 9, *3*.

when not used, p. 39, n.

nē nōn used instead of *ut*, 333, *b*.

neuter. See *nouns*.

nix, declension, 499.

noceō, intrans., and governs dat., 371.

nōlō, conjugation, 368-370, 519.

the imperatives *nōlī* and *nōlīte* in negative appeals or commands, 444, *b*.

nominative case, 12.

subject of a finite verb, 22.

in the third declension has a different vowel from the stem, 126, *a*.

drops the final letter of the stem before *s*, 130, *a*.

of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 246, *a*.

predicate nominative, 37.

nōnne expects the answer *yes*, p. 15, n.

nōs declension, 245, 506.

nostrum is chiefly partitive, 246, *d*.

nouns, neuters have accusative like nominative, 126, *c*.

order of noun and adjective, 32, *c*, p. 22, n. 2.

predicate nouns, 36, 37.

rules of gender, 13.

nox, declension, 152, 496.

nūbēs, declension, 148, 496.

num in questions, 421, *b*.

numerals, 284, 290; given in 505.

O

o-stems (*second declension*), 42, 43,
57-59.

object of a transitive verb, 23.

indirect object, 28.

optative subjunctive, 442, *c*.

order of words in Latin, 32, 33.

ordinals, 505; declined like *bonus*, 290.

P

parēs, genitive plural of, 152, *a*.

pāreō intransitive, 371, *a*.

participles, agreement, 89, 352.

declension, 352.

equivalents in English, 353, *c*.

force of, 353, *a*, *b*.

future used with *sum* to form the periphrastic conjugations, 462, 464.

have no present passive or perfect active, 351.

in deponent verbs, 359.

perfect of in deponent verbs, 359, *a*.

sometimes rendered as a present, p. 197, n. 13.

participles, with *sum*, 353, *d.*
 uses in general, 353.
partitive genitive, 203.
parvus, how compared, 207.
passive, compound forms, 89.
 the agent expressed by the ablative
 with *ā* or *ab*, 76.
pater, declension, 138, 496.
penult, 7, 5; when accented, 9, 2.
perfect tense: loss of *v* in, when contrac-
 tion may take place, 337, *b.*
 subjunctive in appeals and commands.
 See also *participles*.
periphrastic conjugations, 462-466.
person of relative pronouns, 248.
personal pronouns. See *pronouns*.
persuadeō, intransitive, 371, *a.*
pes, declension, 130, 496.
place, where, whence, 406, 407.
 whither, 269, 406, 407.
placeō, intransitive, 371, *a.*
plūs, declension, 208, 503.
portus, irregular dative and ablative
 plural, 231.
possessive adjectives, 247.
 dative, 29.
possum, how compounded, 296, *a.*
 conjugation, 517.
postpositive words, p. 33, n. 2.
potior governs the ablative, 361.
predicate nouns (nominative), 36, 37.
prefixes, their force, 350.
prepositions which govern the abla-
 tive, 405.
 used as the positive of adjs., 200,
 504.
present participle declined, 352.
primary tenses, 418, *a.*
princeps, declension, 126, 496.
principal parts of verbs, p. 26, n.
pronouns, demonstrative: *hic* and *ille*,
 100, 101, declension, 100, 507; *is*,
 119; uses, 119, *a, b, c*, 120; relation
 to *hic* and *ille*, 119, *b*; *iste*, *idem*,
ipse, 303, 507; uses, 304.
 indefinite, *aliquis* and *quidam*, declen-
 sion, 308, 510; *quisquam*, *quilibet*,

quivīs, *quisque*, how declined, 308,
b; *quid*-forms used as nouns, 308, *c.*
 interrogative, 105-107; declension,
 105, 509; review sentences, 116-118.
 personal, declension, 245, 506; nomi-
 native expressed only for emphasis
 or contrast, 246, *a*; use, 245, *a*, 246,
 248.
 possessive. See *possessive adjectives*.
 reflexive, 245, 246, *b, c.*
 relative, 110-113; agreement, 113;
 declension, 110, 508; table of mean-
 ings, 111; review sentences, 116-
 118.
pronunciation, Roman method, vowels,
 4, 5, 6.
 English method, 10.
proper names in *ius* contract *ī* to *i*, 59.
prosum, conjugation, 518.
prudēs, declension, 163, 501.
puer, declension, 57, 495.
purpose, or *final* clauses, 253, *d.*
 expressed by the subjunctive with *ut*
 and *nē*, 254.
 accusative of the gerund or gerundive
 with *ad*, 474, *c.*
 dative of service, 398, *a.*
 relative clauses, 432, 433.
 supine in *um*, 475, 476.
not expressed by the infinitive, 254, *a.*

Q

quaerō compared with *interrogō*, 422.
quam with a comparative, 194.
-que, enclitic, 9, 3.
questions (indirect), 420, 421.
quid equivalent to *aliquid* after *sī*, *nē*,
nisi, *num*, p. 123, n. 6.
quidam, declension, 308, 510.
quis, declension, 105, 509.
quisquam, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*
quilibet, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*
quisque, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*
quivīs, declined like *quidam*, 308, *b.*
 neuter forms in *quid-* are used as
 nouns, 308, *c.*

quō . . . eō, *the . . . the*, p. 92, n. 5.

quod used for *quid* as an interrogative adjective, 107, b.

quoque and quōque, p. 129, n.

R

reading exercises : *Alexander et Parmenio*, 455.

Dē Amicitia, 402.

Nasica et Ennius, 385.

Tubicen, 479.

reading lessons : *A Battle*, 273.

Ars Memoriae, 376.

Cerva et Vitis, 377.

Cicerōnis Epistula ad Terentiam Uxōrem, 312.

Cornelia's Jewels, 226.

Dē Vitis Hominum, 313.

Gallia Pācāta, 392.

Prōserpina, 457, 458.

Scipio and Hannibal, 144.

The Romans and the Sabines, 97.

The Volscians, 177.

reflexive pronouns, 245, 246, b; of the first and second persons, 246, c.

regō, conjugation, 513.

relative pronouns, 110-113; agreement, 113; declension, 110, 508.

clauses of result, purpose, etc., 432, 433.

rēs, declension, 258, 498.

result expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*, 278.

rēx, declension, 126, 496.

Roman history : *stories of Cæsar Octavianus Augustus*, 493.

Cincinnātus, 488.

Gaius Duilius, 489.

Gaius Julius Cæsar, 492.

Gaius Marius, 491.

Horatius et Curiatius, 487.

Marcus Porcius Catō, Puer, 490.

Roman method of pronouncing Latin, 4, 5, 6.

rūs, the accusative of, 269, a.

like names of towns, 407, a, 408.

S

sē, distinguished from *ipse*, 304, g.

secondary tenses, 418, a.

semi-deponent verbs, 362, a.

senex, comparison, 207.

separation, how expressed, 412, 413.

sequence of tenses, 418, 419.

service (dative of), 398, 399.

sibilant, 3.

space (extent of), 259, a, 260.

specification, ablative of, 168.

answers the question, *in what respect?* 167, a.

stem of a word, defined, p. 7, n.

of nouns of the *first declension*, p. 7.

of nouns of the *second declension*, p. 16.

of nouns of the *third declension*, 124;

how found, 126, b; the last vowel

changed to form the nominative,

126, a; the last letter dropped to

form the nominative, 130, a; mute,

125; declension, 126, 130, 496;

liquid, 125; declension, 138, 496;

i-stems, 148, 152, 153; declension,

148, 152, 496; list of *i*-stems, 153.

of nouns of the *fourth declension*, p. 89.

of nouns of the *fifth declension*, p. 100.

of verbs, 73, a.

of the *first and second conjugations*, 172, a.

sub with accusative and ablative, 405, d.

subject of a finite verb, 22.

of an infinitive, 298, c, 299.

agreement, 65.

not expressed, 21, d.

position in a sentence, 32, a, b.

subjunctive of purpose, 253, 254.

result, 277-280.

in relative clauses of cause, purpose, result, and characteristic, 432, 433.

after verbs of fearing, 333.

in less vivid future conditions, 451, 3, 452.

subjunctive, in wishes and appeals, 440-444.
 with *cum* causal and concessive, 434, 435; temporal, 381, 382.
 present tense translated as future, 333, *c*.
suī, declension, 245, 506.
 distinguished from *ipse*, 304, *g*.
sum, conjugation, 516.
 compounds, inflected, 395; govern the dative (except *absum* and *possum*), 397, *a*.
suus, how formed and declined, 247.
 compared with *ēius*, 248, *b*.
supine in *um*, 475, 476.
 in *ū*, 476, *b, c*.
syllables, number of, 7, *i*.
 division of, 7, 2, 3.
 in compound words, 7, 4.
 how named, 7, 5.

T

temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, 381, 382.
tenses of infinitive in indirect discourse, 319, 320.
 primary and secondary, 418, *a*.
 sequence of, 419.
terminations, 19, *a*.
time, how expressed, 154, 155; extent, 259, *a*, 260.
towns, rules for names of, 407.
 place whither, 269.
tōtus, declension, 292, 502.
trēs, declension, 284, 502.
tu, as reflexive, 246, *c*.
tuba, declension, 19, 494.
tuus, how formed and declined, 247.
 compared with *vester*, 247, *a*.

° U

u as a semi-vowel, p. 2, *n*.
ultima, 7, 5.
ūllus, rendered *any* after a negative, *sine*, etc., p. 124, *n*. 7.
ūnus, declension, 284, 502.
urbs, declension, 152, 496.

ut of purpose (negative *nē*), 254.
 translated in various ways, 253.
 of result (negative *ut nōn*), 277, 278.
 translated *that not* with verbs of fearing, 333, *a*.
 translated *when* or *as*, when followed by the indicative, p. 196, *n*. 6.
utinam in subjunc. of appeal, 440, 441.
 omitted with the present, 441, *a*.
ūtor governs the ablative, 361.

V

v, often lost between vowels in the perfect and cognate tenses, 337, *b*.
verbs: agreement, 65; in relative clauses, 248, *a*.
 case of subject, 22; of object, 23.
 personal endings show the person and number of the omitted subject, 21, *d*.
 invariably intransitive give the future active participle in the principal parts, instead of the perfect passive, p. 96, *n*. 1.
 transitive in English are often intransitive and govern the dative in Latin, 371, 372.
 of *first conjugation*, 71-74, 88-91; conjugation, 511.
 of *second conjugation*, 172-174, 184-187; conjugation, 512.
 of *third conjugation*, 220-222, 237-239; conjugation, 513; in *iō*, 265-267; conjugation, 514.
 of *fourth conjugation*, 324-326, 330-332; conjugation, 515.
 how conjugations are distinguished, p. 26, *n*. 1.
 review of four conjugations, 337-341.
 deponents: form, meaning, and characteristics, 358; how conjugated, 359.
 periphrastic conjugations, 462-466.
 irregular verbs: see under *eō*, *fiō*, *ferō*, etc.
 special constructions: see under *subjunctive*, *infinitive*, *participle*.
vester, how formed and declined, 247.
 compared with *tuus*, 247, *a*.

vestrum, usually partitive, 246, *d*.

vetus, comparison, 207.

compared with *senex*, 211.

victor, declension, 138, 496.

videō in the passive often rendered
seem, p. 96, n. 2.

vir, declension, 57, 495.

distinguished from *homō*, 141.

virtūs, declension, 130, 496.

vīs, declension, 499.

vocabularies : Latin-English, p. 251.

English-Latin, p. 275.

vocative case, 12 ; use, 43, *ō*.

of proper names in *-ius*, 59.

of *us*-nouns of the second declension,
43, *a*, 495, *a*.

volō, 368-370 ; conjugation, 519.

vōs, declension, 245, 506.

vowels, quantity : short, 8, 2 ; long, 8, 3.

vulnus, declension, 138, 496.

W

whither, place, how expressed, 269.

wishes, 440-442 ; negative, 441, *a*.

a rel. pro or rel. ady. at the
beginning of a sen. means "and thus"

acdo - ve - cēdī celsus = Tr
acdo - ve - cēdī — = Int
vowel resulting from a contract
generally long.

verbs having no. 4th prin. part

are generally intransitive

thus alud. dixit = one said one
nig another another.

audire = { I heard
I was hearing
I used to hear
I did hear }

active = { to hear
be thou heard
I am not heard }

apponder
dactyl

1
st foot in a verse in Latin poetry
is meter the next to be

Via Latina

AN EASY

LATIN READER.

By

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, *Head-Master of Roxbury
Latin School, Boston.*

With VOCABULARY by

CLARENCE W. GLEASON, *Master in Roxbury
Latin School.*

12mo. Cloth. 203 pages. For introduction, 75 cents.

This book is an attempt to bridge the gap between the first Latin manual, covering forms and simple constructions, and a continuous classical work, like the "Lives of Nepos" or Cæsar's "Gallic War." It has been proved by experience that discouragement and great loss of time result from plunging beginners too early into difficult Latin.

This book is designed for a few months of rapid reading, beginning with selections from "The New Gradatim," and ending with the "Life of Cæsar" and the "Alcibiades" of Nepos slightly simplified.

E. C. Warriner, *Principal of High School (East Side), Saginaw, Mich.:* It is an excellent selection of easy Latin reading, and a book which is admirably suited for the purpose intended.

Emma A. Scudder, *Teacher of Latin, English High School, Cambridge, Mass.:* The subject-matter is interesting, well arranged, and attractive in every respect. I wish we might have such a work introduced into our school to precede Nepos and Cæsar.

Thomas Fitz-Hugh, *Professor of Latin, University of Texas, Austin, Tex.:* It shows the same eminently practical and efficient qualities that characterize all of Mr. Collar's text-books. I entirely approve of the general plan. I can imagine no more useful and available manual for every purpose involved in our discussions.

C. C. Ramsey, *Principal of High School, Fall River, Mass.:* A capital Latin reader; the notes and vocabulary are excellent and the selections could not be better.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

the other 4 can be either

Easy Latin for Sight Reading

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS.

Selections from Ritchie's "Fabulae Faciles," Lhomond's "Urbis Romae Viri Inlustres," and Gellius' "Noctes Atticae."

Edited, with Introduction, Models for Written Lessons, Idioms, and Annotations,

By **B. L. D'OOGHE,**

*Professor of Latin and Greek in the Michigan State Normal College;
editor of "Viri Romae," etc.*

12mo. Cloth. 146 pages. Illustrated. For introduction, 40 cents.

THIS little book is designed to be helpful to those who desire to do more sight reading in secondary schools. It is intended especially for students who wish to learn to read Latin easily and need an elementary guide.

The author holds that students should be taught to read, and to understand as they read, without translation, from the very beginning. The aim from the outset should be to learn to *read Latin*. This is not so difficult, in the opinion of the author, as it seems, and pupils in secondary schools can with proper instruction acquire considerable facility in this direction.

For a well-graded series of selections for higher schools nothing better can be found than Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, Lhomond's *Urbis Romae Viri Inlustres*, and Gellius' *Noctes Atticae*. The selections of this book have accordingly been made from these three sources. The *Fabulae Faciles* may be used to advantage during the latter half of the first year and the first part of the second; the selections from *Viri Romae* come next in difficulty, and then those from Gellius. It has been the plan of the author to afford sufficient and suitable material for the entire preparatory course. The quantities are marked.

From considerable experience with classes in sight reading, and from the experience and publications of others, Professor D'Ooge has compiled and formulated in a few introductory pages some hints and suggestions that will be found useful in teaching the art of reading Latin. These are followed by a few models for written lessons, which will be of practical use to the young student.

The increasing and very proper emphasis placed upon translation at sight in the curricula of all our best higher schools and colleges has insured a cordial welcome to this little book.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

TEXT-BOOKS FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School,
Boston, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal
of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book. 12mo. Cloth. Illustrated.
286 pages. For introduction, \$1.00.

Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book. Complete with Grammar
Exercises, Selections for Translating, and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth. 283 pages.
For introduction, \$1.00.

Latine Reddenda. The English-Latin exercises from "The Beginner's Latin Book."
With Glossarium Grammaticum. 12mo. 41 pages. Paper. For introduction,
20 cents.
With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary, 12mo. 58 pages.
Cloth. For introduction, 30 cents.

Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Greek Composition. Based mainly
upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 201 pages. Illustrated.
For introduction, 90 cents.

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR.

Collar's Via Latina. A new Latin Reader. 12mo. Cloth. 203 pages.
For introduction, 75 cents.

Collar's New Gradatim. Revised. 16mo. Cloth. 189 pages. For
introduction, 50 cents.

Collar's Practical Latin Composition. 12mo. Cloth. 268 pages. For
introduction, \$1.00.

Collar's Gate to Caesar. Sq. 16mo. Cloth. 141 pages. For intro-
duction, 40 cents.

Caesar, Gallic War. Book II. Edited, with Notes and a Vocabulary.
16mo. Cloth. 96 pages. For introduction, 35 cents. *Latin and Greek School
Classics.*

Vergil's Aeneid. Book VII. Issued both with and without translation.
16mo. Cloth. Illustrated. For introduction, 45 cents. *Latin and Greek School
Classics.*

Collar's Shorter Eysenbach. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes to the exercises and Vocabulary.
Revised by CLARA S. CURTIS. 12mo. Cloth. 242 pages. For introduction,
\$1.00.

Collar's German Lessons. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar.
Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes, Selections for Reading, and Vocab-
ularies. 12mo. Cloth. 360 pages. For introduction, \$1.20.

Collar's English into German. The English Exercises from Collar's
Eysenbach's German Lessons. 12mo. Paper. 51 pages. For introduction,
25 cents.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S SHORTER LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

Condensed and Revised by Professor JAMES B. GREENOUGH,
Assisted by ALBERT A. HOWARD.

12mo. Cloth. 371 pages. For introduction, 95 cents.

Space does not allow here a full description of this book, but attention is called to the following points :

First. Allen and Greenough's Shorter Latin Grammar does not attempt the impossible. It does not aim to be at once a brief grammar and a full one, to cover both preparatory and college Latin courses in a space sufficient for only the former.

Second. The reduction of size is secured not by retaining arbitrarily what one or two scholars deem essential, but by ascertaining minutely what points are involved in the study of preparatory Latin. It must be admitted that any one who attacks the problem in this way will find that a great deal more information is required for thorough reading of the preparatory texts than any *a priori* maker of a short Latin grammar would suppose.

Third. It has been found entirely feasible to follow the section numbering of the large Allen and Greenough Grammar, so that the full and the short grammars can be used in the same classes and the same set of references apply. If a class includes boys who are going to college and also boys who are not, the former may purchase the full grammar and the latter the short one.

Fourth. The Latin grammar that shall be thoroughly satisfactory under all the conditions it is to meet in thousands of schools of every sort, must be a growth, and it is believed that the experience of making a full and complete grammar and of watching the use of it in schools for years, is almost a prerequisite to the preparation of a thoroughly satisfactory small one.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

THE FIRST LATIN BOOK

By W. C. COLLAR,
Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL,
Recently Principal of Chauncy Hall School, Boston.

12mo. Cloth. 286 pages. Illustrated. For introduction, \$1.00.

THIS is an ideal text-book for teachers of Latin, for it enables them, while following a rigorously scientific method, to impart interest, freshness, and variety to the teaching of the elements of the language.

It is an ideal text-book for beginners in Latin, for by its use they are able to master the rudiments of the language with ease and rapidity, and without the usual tediousness and drudgery.

The reasons why this book stands the test of the school-room are:

Because it is brief, simple, and attractive, and at the same time thorough and scholarly.

Because at an early stage it introduces easy reading lessons to illustrate forms and principles already studied.

Because it presents continuity in the separate exercises for translation into English and into Latin, introduced as early and followed out as fully as practicable.

Because it distributes difficulties and secures great scope, variety, and flexibility in practice by bringing forward certain of the pronouns and certain constructions that are usually deferred till later and massed together.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S NEW CAESAR

EDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin in Harvard University, B. L. D'OOGHE, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal College, Ypsilanti, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, formerly Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Boston.

Seven books. 12mo. Half morocco. Fully illustrated. 1x + 452 pages.
With a special vocabulary of 162 pages.
For introduction, \$1.25.

THIS new edition of Caesar's "Gallic War" keeps prominently in view the needs of the beginner, on the ground that a large majority of those who read Caesar take it up immediately after finishing their first lessons. It is believed that all this class of students' needs have been fully met in the present edition.

Professor Greenough has specially qualified himself for editing this edition by traveling and making recent investigations in France. Not only the notes, but the illustrations have profited greatly. A considerable number of the pictures in this edition are from photographs made especially for it. In other cases, pictures not previously seen in this country have been obtained. The museums have been visited and many new illustrations drawn from them. At the same time, all the standard and essential illustrations are used. It is believed that this part of the editing will be found of signal excellence and practical value.

Several reading courses are suggested, each one of which, while embracing an amount of text equal to the first four books, contains choice selections of narrative and adventure from the various books. It is believed that this feature will be especially acceptable to teachers who have found the monotony of Caesar irksome, but have seen no way to vary the course.

The text has been revised, many changes having been made, and the whole presents the commentaries in an ideal form for rapid and enjoyable reading. Quantities of long vowels are marked.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

Imp Ind	{	Imp Subj.
Perf "		or
Plu "		Plu "

Pres Ind	{	Pres Subj.
		or
		Perf. Subj.

Imp Ind.	{	Imp Subj.
		Plu. Subj.

Pres Ind	{	Pres Subj.
		or
Fut "		Perf "

Int Perf "

vetō + ubi in indirect commands
 like the infinitive w. subj. acc.
 ... the subj.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

JAN 2 1940

25 Feb '49 JF

27 Oct '49 JF

DEC 23 1998

YB 00294

61
163

Mute

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C061455845

linguals - 2. d

If the stem ends in a mute
labial to form the nom. sing

870723

760
C697
fi

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Get stem by stripping
of is of Gen.

Mute nom of 3rd Decl.
the stem for Nom. Case

